Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

with answers

THIRD EDITION

Raymond Murphy

Cambridge University Press
www.cambridge.org
Contents

Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present
1 am/is/are
2 am/is/are (questions)
3 I am doing (present continuous)
4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
6 I don’t ... (present simple negative)
7 Do you ... ? (present simple questions)
8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
9 I have ... and I’ve got ...

Past
10 was/were
11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
12 I didn’t ... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)
13 I was doing (past continuous)
14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

Present perfect
15 I have done (present perfect 1)
16 I’ve just ... I’ve already ... I haven’t ... yet (present perfect 2)
17 Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)
18 How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)
19 for since ago
20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

Passive
21 is done was done (passive 1)
22 is being done has been done (passive 2)

Verb forms
23 be/have/do in present and past tenses
24 Regular and irregular verbs

Future
25 What are you doing tomorrow?
26 I’m going to ...
27 will/shall 1
28 will/shall 2

Modals, imperative etc.
29 might
30 can and could
31 must mustn’t don’t need to

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271
should
I have to ...
Would you like ...?  I'd like ...
Do this!  Don't do that!  Let's do this!
I used to ...

There and it
there is  there are
there was/were  there has/have been  there will be
It ...

Auxiliary verbs
I am, I don't etc.
Have you?  Are you?  Don't you? etc.
too/either  so am I / neither do I etc.
isn't, haven't, don't etc.  (negatives)

Questions
is it ...?  have you ...?  do they ...? etc.  (questions 1)
Who saw you?  Who did you see?  (questions 2)
Who is she talking to?  What is it like?  (questions 3)
What ...?  Which ...?  How ...?  (questions 4)
How long does it take ...?
Do you know where ...?  I don't know what ... etc.

Reported speech
She said that ...  He told me that ...

-ing and to ...
work/working  go/going  do/doing
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
I want you to ...  I told you to ...
I went to the shop to ...

Go, get, do, make and have
go to ...  go on ...  go for ...  go -ing
get
do and make
have

Pronouns and possessives
I/me  he/him  they/them etc.
my/his/their etc.
Whose is this?  It's mine/yours/hers etc.
I/me/my/mine
myself/yourselves/ourselves etc.
's (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)
A and the
65 a/an ...
66 train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
67 a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)
68 a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)
69 a/an and the
70 the ...
71 go to work go home go to the cinema
72 I like music I hate exams
73 the ... (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns
74 this/that/these/those
75 one/ones
76 some and any
77 not + any no none
78 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing
79 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
80 every and all
81 all most some any no/none
82 both either neither
83 a lot much many
84 (a) little (a) few

Adjectives and adverbs
85 old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)
86 quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)
87 old/older expensive / more expensive
88 older than ... more expensive than ...
89 not as ... as
90 the oldest the most expensive
91 enough
92 too

Word order
93 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
94 always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)
95 still yet already
96 Give me that book! Give it to me!

Conjunctions and clauses
97 and but or so because
98 When ...
99 If we go ... If you see ... etc.
100 If I had ... If we went ... etc.
101 a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)
102 the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)
Prepositions
103 at 8 o'clock on Monday in April
104 from ... to until since for
105 before after during while
106 in at on (places 1)
107 in at on (places 2)
108 to in at (places 3)
109 under, behind, opposite etc.
110 up, over, through etc.
111 on at by with about
112 afraid of ... , good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing
113 listen to ... , look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs
114 go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
115 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices
Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.) 246
Appendix 5 Spelling 248
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.) 250
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study guide 271

Key to Exercises 283
Key to Additional exercises 310
Key to Study guide 313

Index 315

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271.
Thanks

For their help in producing this third edition of Essential Grammar in Use, I would like to thank Liz Driscoll, Jessica Roberts and Alison Sharpe. I would also like to thank the teachers and reviewers from various countries who provided me with feedback on the previous edition.

Illustrations by Kate Charlesworth, Richard Deverell, Gillian Martin, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Ian West and Simon Williams

Design by Kamae Design
This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (Contents).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (I have been, he has done etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the Contents or the Index (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study guide at the back of the book.

Study guide (pages 271–282)
Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

Information

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page. Use the Key to check your answers. The Key is on pages 283–309. Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don’t forget the seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 252–270). There is a list of these exercises on page 252.

CD Rom
You can buy this book with or without a CD Rom. On the CD Rom there are more exercises on all the units, and these are different from the exercises in the book. There are also more than 600 test questions.
To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

**Organisation of the book**

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 271.

Finally, there is a *Key* (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the *Study guide* and *Key* is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

**Level**

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

**Using the book**

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.
In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

**CD Rom**

The book is sold with or without a CD Rom. This contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of more than 600 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests. The CD Rom is also available separately.

---

**Essential Grammar in Use Third Edition**

This is a new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use*. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- The book has been redesigned with new colour illustrations.
- There is one new unit (Unit 35) and some reorganisation, so that most units have different numbers from the previous edition.
- There are many (usually minor) revisions to the explanations, examples and exercises.
- There are two new pages of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270).
- There is a new *Study guide* at the back of the book to help users decide which units to study.
- There is a new CD Rom with further exercises to accompany the book.
am/is/are

positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>(I'm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(he's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(she's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(it's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(we're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(you're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(they're)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am not</th>
<th>(I'm not)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(he's not or he isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(she's not or she isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(it's not or it isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(we're not or we aren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(you're not or you aren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(they're not or they aren't)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

short forms

☐ I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
☐ I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
☐ Steve is ill. He's in bed.
☐ My brother is afraid of dogs.
☐ It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
☐ Ann and I are good friends.
☐ Your keys are on the table.
☐ I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
☐ Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
☐ Jane isn't a teacher. She's a student.
☐ Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
☐ It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.

that's = that is    there's = there is    here's = here is

☐ Thank you. That's very kind of you.
☐ Look! There's Chris.
☐ 'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'
Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).
1 she is ________ 3 it is not ________ 5 I am not ________
2 they are ________ 4 that is ________ 6 you are not ________

1.2 Write am, is or are.
1 The weather ________ nice today. 5 Look! There ________ Carol.
2 I ________ not rich. 6 My brother and I ________ good tennis players.
3 This bag ________ heavy. 7 Emily ________ at home. Her children ________ at school.
4 These bags ________ heavy. 8 I ________ a taxi driver. My sister ________ a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.
1 Steve is ill. ________ in bed.
2 I'm not hungry, but ________ thirsty.
3 Mr Thomas is a very old man. ________ 98.
4 These chairs aren't beautiful, but ________ comfortable.
5 The weather is nice today. ________ warm and sunny.
6 '_______ late.' 'No, I'm not. I'm early!'
7 Catherine isn't at home. ________ at work.
8 '_______ your coat.' 'Oh, thank you very much.'

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.
1 (name?) My ________ 5 (favourite colour or colours?)
2 (from?) I ________ 6 (interested in … ?)
3 (age?) I ________ 7 (age?)
4 (job?) I ________ 8 (job?)

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:
afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty

1 ________ 3 He ________ 5 ________
2 They ________ 4 ________ 6 ________

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use is/aren't or are/aren't.
1 (it / hot today) ________ It isn't hot today. ________ or ________ It's hot today.
2 (it / windy today) It ________ ________
3 (my hands / cold) My ________ ________
4 (Brazil / a very big country) ________ ________
5 (diamonds / cheap) ________ ________
6 (Toronto / in the US) ________ ________

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use I'm / I'm not.
7 (tired) I ________ ________ or ________ I'm not tired.
8 (hungry) ________ ________
9 (a good swimmer) ________ ________
10 (interested in football) ________ ________

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 252)
am/is/are (questions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Am I late?'    'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?'  'No, she's out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?'  'No, they're out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?'  'Yes, a little.'
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:
- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home?  (not Is at home your mother?)
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new?  (not Are new your shoes?)

**Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?**
- Where is your mother?  Is she at home?
- Where are you from?  'Canada.'
- What colour is your car?  'It's red.'
- How old is Joe?  'He's 24.'
- How are your parents?  Are they well?
- These postcards are nice. How much are they?
- This hotel isn't very good. Why is it so expensive?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>short answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Are you tired?'  'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?'  'No, I'm not, but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is your friend English?'  'Yes, he is.'
- 'Are these your keys?'  'Yes, they are.'
- 'That's my seat.'  'No, it isn't.'
Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

2. Is your car blue? B. No, I'm not.
3. Is Linda from London? C. Yes, you are.
6. What colour is your bag? F. No, it's black.
8. How is George? H. No, she's American.

2.2 Make questions with these words.

1. (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home?
2. (your parents / are / well) Are your parents well?
3. (interesting / is / your job) Is your job interesting?
4. (the shops / are / open today) Are the shops open today?
5. (from / where / you / are) Where are you from?
6. (interested in sport / you / are) Are you interested in sport?
7. (is / near here / the post office) Is the post office near here?
8. (at school / are / your children) Are your children at school?
9. (you / are / late / why) Why are you late?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use What ... / Who ... / Where ... / How ...

1. How are your parents? They're very well.
2. The bus stop is at the end of the street.
3. Your children are five, six and ten.
4. These oranges are £1.50 a kilo.
5. Your favourite sport is skiing.
6. The man in this photograph is my father.
7. Your new shoes are black.

2.4 Write the questions.

2. Are you American? No, I'm Australian.
3. How old are you? I'm 30.
4. Are you a teacher? No, I'm a lawyer.
5. Are you married? Yes, I am.
6. Is her name Anna? No, she's a designer.
7. How old is she? She's 27.

2.5 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

1. Are you married? No, I'm not.
2. Are you thirsty? No, I'm not.
3. Is it cold today? Yes, it is.
4. Are your hands cold? Yes, they are.
5. Is it dark now? Yes, it is.
6. Are you a teacher? Yes, I am.

→ Additional exercises 1–2 (pages 252–53)
I am doing (present continuous)

She's eating.
She isn't reading.

It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.

They're running.
They aren't walking.

The present continuous is:
am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am (not)</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>is (not)</th>
<th>-ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'm working. I'm not watching TV.
- Maria is reading a newspaper.
- She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.)
- The phone is ringing.
- We're having dinner.
- You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening ...)
- The children are doing their homework.

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening now:

```
I'm working
she's wearing a hat
they're playing football
I'm not watching television
```

past now future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look, there's Sarah. She's wearing a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. It's not raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the park.'
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can I phone you later?
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

- come → coming
- write → writing
- dance → dancing
- run → running
- sit → sitting
- swim → swimming
- lie → lying

am/is/are → Unit 1 are you doing? (questions) → Unit 4 I am doing and I do → Unit 8
What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25
Exercises

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:
- eat  have  lie  play  sit  wait

1. She's eating an apple.  
2. He for a bus.  
3. They football.  
4. on the floor.  
5. breakfast.  
6. on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:
- build  cook  go  have  stand  stay  swim  work

1. Please be quiet. I 'm working.  
2. 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He .'
3. 'You on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
4. Look! Somebody in the river.
5. We're here on holiday. We at the Central Hotel.
6. 'Where's Sue?' 'She a shower.'
7. They a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
8. now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use She's -ing or She isn't -ing.

1. (have dinner) Jane isn't having dinner.  
2. (watch television) She's watching television.  
3. (sit on the floor) She .  
4. (read a book)  
5. (play the piano)  
6. (laugh)  
7. (wear a hat)  
8. (write a letter)  

Jane

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair.  
2. (it / snow) It's snowing. or It isn't snowing.  
3. (I / sit / on a chair)  
4. (I / eat)  
5. (it / rain)  
6. (I / learn / English)  
7. (I / listen / to music)  
8. (the sun / shine)  
9. (I / wear / shoes)  
10. (I / read / a newspaper)  

17
are you doing?  
(present continuous questions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Are you feeling OK?’  ‘Yes, I’m fine, thanks.’
- ‘Is it raining?’  ‘Yes, take an umbrella.’
- Why are you wearing a coat?  It’s not cold.
- ‘What’s Paul doing?’  ‘He’s reading the newspaper.’
- ‘What are the children doing?’  ‘They’re watching television.’
- Look, there’s Emily! Where’s she going?
- Who are you waiting for?  Are you waiting for Sue?

Study the word order:

is/are + subject + -ing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>working today?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>working today? (not Is working Paul today?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>going?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>are those people</td>
<td>going? (not Where are going those people?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am.</th>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>isn’t.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes,</td>
<td>he’s</td>
<td>he isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>she’s</td>
<td>she isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>it’s</td>
<td>it isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we’re</td>
<td>we aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you’re</td>
<td>you aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they’re</td>
<td>they aren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Are you going now?’  ‘Yes, I am.’
- ‘Is Paul working today?’  ‘Yes, he is.’
- ‘Is it raining?’  ‘No, it isn’t.’
- ‘Are your friends staying at a hotel?’  ‘No, they aren’t. They’re staying with me.’

1 am doing → Unit 3  What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25  questions → Units 44–47
4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1. (you / watch / it?) Are you watching it?
   No, you can turn it off.

2. (you / go / now?) ____________________________
   Yes, see you tomorrow.

3. (it / rain?) ____________________________
   No, not at the moment.

4. (you / enjoy / the film?) ____________________________
   Yes, it's very funny.

5. (that clock / work?) ____________________________
   No, it's broken.

6. (you / wait / for a bus?) ____________________________
   No, for a taxi.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use: cry, eat, go, laugh, look at, read.

1. What are you reading?

2. Where is she?

3. What is he doing?

4. Why did you laugh?

5. What are they doing?

6. Why are you laughing?

4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (is / working / Paul / today) Is Paul working today?
2. (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing?
3. (you / are / listening / to me) ____________________________
4. (where / your friends / are / going) ____________________________
5. (are / watching / your parents / television) ____________________________
6. (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ____________________________
7. (why / you / are / looking / at me) ____________________________
8. (is / coming / the bus) ____________________________

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

1. Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
2. Are you wearing a watch?
3. Are you eating something?
4. Is it raining?
5. Are you sitting on the floor?
6. Are you feeling well?

→ Additional exercise 3 (page 253)
I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

They read / he likes / I work etc. = the present simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>reads</td>
<td>likes</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember:
he works / she lives / it rains etc.
- I work in a shop. My brother works in a bank. (not My brother work)
- It rains a lot in winter.
I have → he/she/it has:
- John has a shower every day.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):
- -es after -s / -sh / -ch: pass → passes finish → finishes watch → watches
- -y → -ies: study → studies try → tries
  also: do → does go → goes

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:
- I like big cities.
- Your English is good. You speak very well.
- Tim works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o’clock in the evening.
- The earth goes round the sun.
- We do a lot of different things in our free time.
- It costs a lot of money to build a hospital.

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple
- Sue always gets to work early. (not Sue gets always)
- I never eat breakfast. (not I eat never)
- We often go away at weekends.
- Mark usually plays football on Sundays.
- I sometimes walk to work, but not very often.

I don't ... (negative) → Unit 6  Do you ... ? (questions) → Unit 7  I am doing and I do → Unit 8  always/usually/often etc. (word order) → Unit 94
5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.
1 (read) she reads 3 (fly) it 5 (have) she
2 (think) he 4 (dance) he 6 (finish) it

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:
   eat  go  live  play  play  sleep

1 ____________ the piano. 4 ____________ tennis.
2 They ____________ in a very big house. 5 ____________ to the cinema a lot.
3 ____________ a lot of fruit. 6 ____________ seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:
   boil  close  cost  cost  like  like  meet  open  speak  teach  wash
1 Maria ____________ four languages.
2 The shops in the city centre usually ____________ at 9 o’clock in the morning.
3 The City Museum ____________ at 5 o’clock in the evening.
4 Tina is a teacher. She ____________ mathematics to young children.
5 My job is very interesting. I ____________ a lot of people.
6 Peter’s car is always dirty. He never ____________ it.
7 Food is expensive. It ____________ a lot of money.
8 Shoes are expensive. They ____________ a lot of money.
9 Water ____________ at 100 degrees Celsius.
10 Julia and I are good friends. I ____________ her and she ____________ me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).
1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) ____________ Sue ____________ early.
2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I ____________
3 (work / Martina / hard / always) ____________
4 (like / chocolate / children / usually) ____________
5 (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) ____________
6 (often / people’s names / I / forget) ____________
7 (television / Tim / watch / never) ____________
8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30) ____________
9 (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) ____________

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.
1 (watch TV in the evening) ____________ I usually ____________ TV in the evening.
2 (read in bed) I ____________
3 (get up before 7 o’clock) ____________
4 (go to work/school by bus) ____________
5 (drink coffee in the morning) ____________
I don’t ... (present simple negative)

The present simple negative is don’t/doesn’t + verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>I don’t work (do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we like</td>
<td>we don’t like (do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>you don’t do (do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>they don’t have (do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he works</td>
<td>he doesn’t work (does not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she likes</td>
<td>she doesn’t like (does not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it does</td>
<td>it doesn’t (does not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has (is not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I drink coffee, but I don’t drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn’t drink coffee.
- You don’t work very hard.
- We don’t watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn’t rain very often.
- Gary and Nicole don’t know many people.

Remember:

I/we/you/they don’t ... he/she/it doesn’t ...
- I don’t like football.
- He doesn’t like football.
- I don’t like Fred and Fred doesn’t like me. (not Fred don’t like)
- My car doesn’t use much petrol. (not My car don’t use)
- Sometimes he is late, but it doesn’t happen very often.

We use don’t/doesn’t + infinitive (don’t like / doesn’t speak / doesn’t do etc.):
- I don’t like washing the car. I don’t do it very often.
- Sarah speaks Spanish, but she doesn’t speak Italian. (not doesn’t speaks)
- Bill doesn’t do his job very well. (not Bill doesn’t his job)
- Paula doesn’t usually have breakfast. (not doesn’t ... has)

1 do/work/like etc. (present simple) → Unit 5  Do you ... ? (present simple questions) → Unit 7
6.1 Write the negative.
1 I play the piano very well. I don’t play the piano very well.
2 Jane plays the piano very well. Jane ..........................................
3 They know my phone number. They ..........................................
4 We work very hard. .................................................................
5 He has a bath every day. .........................................................
6 You do the same thing every day. ...........................................

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with ‘like’.

Do you like …?

Ben and Sophie like classical music.

Kate ................................................................. classical music.

I .................................................................

2 Ben and Sophie

Kate .................................................................

I .................................................................

3

6.3 Write about yourself. Use: I never ... or I often ... or I don’t ... very often.

1 (watch TV) I don’t watch TV very often. or I never watch TV. or I often watch TV.

2 (go to the theatre)

3 (ride a bicycle)

4 (eat in restaurants)

5 (travel by train)

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don’t/doesn’t + these verbs:

- cost
- go
- know
- read
- see
- use
- wear

1 I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I ............................................... it.
2 Paul has a car, but he ................................................................. it very often.
3 Paul and his friends like films, but they ................................................................. to the cinema very often.
4 Amanda is married, but she ................................................................. a ring.
5 I ................................................................. much about politics. I’m not interested in it.
6 The Regent Hotel isn’t expensive. It ................................................................. much to stay there.
7 Brian lives very near us, but we ................................................................. him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1 Margaret ................................ four languages – English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
2 I ................................................................. my job. It’s very boring. (like)
3 ‘Where’s Martin?’ ‘I’m sorry. I ................................................................. ’ (know)
4 Sue is a very quiet person. She ................................................................. very much. (talk)
5 Andy ................................................................. a lot of tea. It’s his favourite drink. (drink)
6 It’s not true! I ................................................................. it! (believe)
7 That’s a very beautiful picture. I ................................................................. it very much. (like)
8 Mark is a vegetarian. He ................................................................. meat. (eat)
Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

We use *do*/*does* in present simple questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I we you they</td>
<td>do I we you they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work like do have</td>
<td>work? like? do? have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he she it works likes does has</td>
<td>he she it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study the word order:

*do*/*does* + subject + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What do you do? = What's your job?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you work on Sundays?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live near here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does Chris play tennis?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do your parents live?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you wash your hair?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does this word mean?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does it cost to fly to Rome?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions with always/usually/often:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>Do you always have breakfast?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you Chris often phone you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does you usually do at weekends?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember:

*do* I/we/you/they ...  
*does* he/she/it ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I/we/you/they do.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>I/we/you/they don't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Do you play tennis?’ ‘No, I don’t.’
- ‘Do your parents speak English?’ ‘Yes, they do.’
- ‘Does Gary work hard?’ ‘Yes, he does.’
- ‘Does your sister live in London?’ ‘No, she doesn’t.’

I do/work/like etc. → Unit 5  
I don’t ... (negative) → Unit 6  
questions → Units 44–47
Exercises

7.1 Write questions with Do ... ? and Does ... ?
1 I like chocolate. How about you? Do you like chocolate?
2 I play tennis. How about you? ..............................................?
3 You live near here. How about Lucy? ..............................................?
4 Tom plays tennis. How about his friends? ..............................................?
5 You speak English. How about your brother? ..............................................?
6 I do yoga every morning. How about you? ..............................................?
7 Sue often goes away. How about Paul? ..............................................?
8 I want to be famous. How about you? ..............................................?
9 You work hard. How about Anna? ..............................................?

7.2 Make questions from these words + do/does. Put the words in the right order.
1 (where / live / your parents) Where do your parents live?
2 (you / early / always / get up) Do you always get up early?
3 (how often / TV / you / watch) ..............................................?
4 (you / want / what / for dinner) ..............................................?
5 (like / you / football) ..............................................?
6 (your brother / like / football) ..............................................?
7 (what / you / do / in your free time) ..............................................?
8 (your sister / work / where) ..............................................?
9 (to the cinema / often / you / go) ..............................................?
10 (what / mean / this word) ..............................................?
11 (often / snow / it / here) ..............................................?
12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you) ..............................................?
13 (how much / to phone New York / it / cost) ..............................................?
14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) ..............................................?

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

\[ \text{do} \quad \text{do} \quad \text{enjoy} \quad \text{go} \quad \text{like} \quad \text{start} \quad \text{teach} \quad \text{work} \]

1 What \[ \text{do you do} \] ?
2 .............................................. it?
3 What time .............................................. in the morning?
4 .............................................. on Saturdays?
5 How .............................................. to work?
6 And your husband. What .............................................. ?
7 What .............................................. ?
8 .............................................. his job?

7.4 Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don't. etc.).
1 Do you watch TV a lot? .............................................. No, I don't. Or Yes, I do.
2 Do you live in a big city? ..............................................
3 Do you often ride a bicycle? ..............................................
4 Does it rain a lot where you live? ..............................................
5 Do you play the piano? ..............................................

→ Additional exercises 4–7 (pages 253–54)
I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

Jack is watching television.
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack plays the guitar,
but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn’t. (present continuous)
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (present simple)

Present continuous (I am doing) = now, at the time of speaking:

I’m doing

past now future
☐ Please be quiet. I’m working. (not I work)
☐ Tom is having a shower at the moment. (not Tom has)
☐ Take an umbrella with you. It’s raining.
☐ You can turn off the television. I’m not watching it.
☐ Why are you under the table? What are you doing?

Present simple (I do) = in general, all the time or sometimes:

I do

past now future
☐ I work every day from 9 o’clock to 5.30.
☐ Tom has a shower every morning.
☐ It rains a lot in winter.
☐ I don’t watch television very often.
☐ What do you usually do at the weekend?

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):
like love want know understand remember depend
prefer hate need mean believe forget

Use only the present simple with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):
☐ I’m tired. I want to go home. (not I’m wanting)
☐ ‘Do you know that girl?’ ‘Yes, but I don’t remember her name.’
☐ I don’t understand. What do you mean?

present continuous → Units 3–4 present simple → Units 5–7 present for the future → Unit 25
8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1.

Does he take photographs? Yes, he does.
Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.
What is he doing? He's having a bath.

2.

Is she driving a bus? ____________________________
Does she drive a bus? ____________________________
What is she doing? ____________________________

3.

Does he clean windows? ____________________________
Is he cleaning a window? ____________________________
What is he doing? ____________________________

4.

Are they teaching? ____________________________
Do they teach? ____________________________
What do they do? ____________________________

8.2 Complete the sentences with am/is/are or do/don’t/does/doesn’t.

1 Excuse me, ____________________________ you speak English?
2 ‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘I ____________________________ know.’
3 What’s funny? Why ____________________________ you laughing?
4 ‘What ____________________________ your sister do?’ ‘She’s a dentist.’
5 It ____________________________ raining. I ____________________________ want to go out in the rain.
6 ‘Where ____________________________ you come from?’ ‘Canada.’
7 How much ____________________________ it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8 Steve is a good tennis player, but he ____________________________ play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).

1 Excuse me, ____________________________ (you/speak) English?
2 ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s having ____________________________ (he/have) a shower.’
3 I ____________________________ (I/not/watch) television very often.
4 Listen! Somebody ____________________________ (sing).
5 Sandra is tired. ____________________________ (she/want) to go home now.
6 How often ____________________________ (you/read) a newspaper?
7 ‘Excuse me, but ____________________________ (you/sit) in my place.’ ‘Oh, I’m sorry.’
8 I’m sorry, ____________________________ (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9 It’s late. ____________________________ (I/go) home now.
   (you/come) with me?
10 What time ____________________________ (your father / finish) work every day?
11 You can turn off the radio. ____________________________ (I/not/listen) to it.
12 ‘Where’s Paul?’ ‘In the kitchen. ____________________________ (he/cook) something.’
13 Martin ____________________________ (not/usually/drive) to work. He ____________________________ (usually/walk).
14 Sue ____________________________ (not/like) coffee. ____________________________ (she/prefer) tea.
I have ... and I've got ...

You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I have blue eyes. or I've got blue eyes.
- Tim has two sisters. or Tim has got two sisters.
- Our car has four doors. or Our car has got four doors.
- Sarah isn't feeling well. She has a headache. or She's got a headache.
- They like animals. They have a horse, three dogs and six cats. or They've got a horse ...

I haven't got / have you got? etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
<td>got</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has not (hasn't)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got a motorbike, but I haven't got a car.
- Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Helen got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

I don't have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does ...:

- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house, but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Helen have a car? (= Has Helen got a car?)
- What do you have in your bag? (= What have you got in your bag?)

had / didn't have (past) → Units 11-12  have breakfast / have a shower etc. → Unit 58  some/any → Unit 76
Exercises  Unit 9

9.1 Write the short form with got (we've got / he hasn't got etc.).
1 we have got  3 they have got  5 it has got
2 he has got  4 she has not got  6 I have not got

9.2 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

No. 1 He hasn't got a car.
Mark
1 Have you got a car?
2 No.
3 Have you got a computer?
4 Yes.
5 Have you got a mobile phone?
6 Yes, two brothers and a sister.

What about you? Write sentences with I've got or I haven't got.
7 (a computer)
8 (a dog)
9 (a bike)
10 (brothers/sisters)

9.3 Write these sentences with got (I've got / have you got etc.). The meaning is the same.
1 They have two children. They've got two children.
2 She doesn't have a key. She hasn't got a key.
3 He has a new job.
4 They don't have much money.
5 Do you have an umbrella?
6 We have a lot of work to do.
7 I don't have your phone number.
8 Does your father have a car?
9 How much money do we have?

9.4 Write have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.
1 Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2 They like animals. They've got three dogs and two cats.
3 Charles isn't happy. He has a lot of problems.
4 They don't read much. They've read many books.
5 'What's wrong?' 'I've got something in my eye.'
6 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I haven't got it.'
7 Julia wants to go to the concert, but she hasn't got a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven't/hasn't got with:

a lot of friends four wheels a headache six legs
a garden much time a key
1 I'm not feeling well. I've got a headache.
2 It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.
3 Most cars
4 Everybody likes Tom. He
5 I can't open the door. I
6 An insect
7 We must hurry. We

→ Additional exercises 5–7 (page 254)
Unit 10

was/were

last night       now

Now Robert is at work.
At midnight last night he wasn't at work.
He was in bed. He was asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):
- I am tired. (now)
- Where is Kate? (now)
- The weather is good today.

are (present) → were (past):
- You are late. (now)
- They aren’t here. (now)

I was tired last night.
Where was Kate yesterday?
The weather was good last week.

You were late yesterday.
They weren’t here last Sunday.

positive    negative    question

I
he
she
it
was
I
he
she
it
was not
( wasn’t )

we
you
they
were
we
you
they
were not
( weren’t )

I?
he?
she?
it?
was
we?
you?
they?

Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
We were hungry after the journey, but we weren’t tired.
The hotel was comfortable, but it wasn’t expensive.

Was the weather nice when you were on holiday?
Your shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
Why were you late this morning?

Short answers

Yes, I/he/she/it was. we/you/they were.
No, I/he/she/it wasn’t. we/you/they weren’t.

‘Were you late?’ ‘No, I wasn’t.’
‘Was Ted at work yesterday?’ ‘Yes, he was.’
‘Were Sue and Steve at the party?’ ‘No, they weren’t.’

am/is/are → Units 1–2     I was doing → Unit 13
Exercises

Unit 10

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GARY</th>
<th>JACK</th>
<th>KATE</th>
<th>SUE</th>
<th>MR AND MRS HALL</th>
<th>BEN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Gary was in bed.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>And you? I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Jack and Kate</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.2 Write am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

1 Last year she ____________ 22, so she ____________ 23 now.
2 Today the weather ____________ nice, but yesterday it ____________ very cold.
3 I ____________ hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I feel fine this morning, but I ____________ very tired last night.
5 Where ____________ you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6 Don't buy those shoes. They ____________ very expensive.
7 I like your new jacket. ____________ it expensive?
8 This time last year I ____________ in Paris.
9 'Where ____________ the children?' 'I don't know. They ____________ here a few minutes ago.'

10.3 Write was/were or wasn't/weren't.

1 We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room ____________ very small and it ____________ clean.
2 Mark ____________ at work last week because he ____________ ill. He's better now.
3 Yesterday ____________ a public holiday, so the banks ____________ closed. They're open today.
4 ____________ Kate and Bill at the party? 'Kate ____________ there, but Bill ____________ ?
5 'Where are my keys?' 'I don't know. They ____________ on the table, but they're not there now.'
6 You ____________ at home last night. Where ____________ you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + was/were. Put the words in the right order.

1 (late / you / this morning / why?)
   ____________ Why were you late this morning?

2 (difficult / your exam?)
   ____________

3 (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)
   ____________

4 (your new camera / how much?)
   ____________

5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
   ____________

6 (nice / the weather / last week?)
   ____________

The traffic was bad.
No, it was easy.
They were on holiday.
Sixty pounds.
Because you were late.
Yes, it was beautiful.
worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

They **watch** television every evening.  
*present simple*

They **watched** television yesterday evening.  
*past simple*

**watched** is the past simple:

I/we/you/they  
he/she/it    **watched**

The past simple is often **-ed** (*regular verbs*). For example:

- work → **worked**  
dance → **danced**
- clean → **cleaned**  
stay → **stayed**
- start → **started**  
need → **needed**

☐ I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I **cleaned** my teeth.
☐ Terry **worked** in a bank from 1996 to 2003.
☐ Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
☐ We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

*Spelling* (→ Appendix 5):

- try → **tried**
- study → **studied**
- copy → **copied**
- stop → **stopped**
- plan → **planned**

Some verbs are **irregular** (= not regular). The past simple is **not -ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>began</th>
<th>broke</th>
<th>fall</th>
<th>found</th>
<th>leave</th>
<th>left</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>began</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>came</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ate</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronounced 'red'*

☐ I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9 o’clock.
☐ We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
☐ Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
☐ James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.
11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

- clean  
- die  
- enjoy  
- finish  
- happen  
- open  
- rain  
- start  
- stay  
- want

1. I ___________ my teeth three times yesterday. 
2. It was hot in the room, so I ___________ the window. 
3. The film was very long. It ___________ at 7.15 and ___________ at 10 o’clock. 
4. When I was a child, I ___________ to be a doctor. 
5. The accident ___________ last Sunday afternoon. 
6. It’s a nice day today, but yesterday it ___________ all day. 
7. We ___________ our holiday last year. We ___________ at a very nice place. 
8. Anna’s grandfather ___________ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1 get ___________  4 pay ___________  7 go ___________  10 know ___________
2 see ___________  5 visit ___________  8 think ___________  11 put ___________
3 play ___________  6 buy ___________  9 copy ___________  12 speak ___________

11.3 Read about Lisa’s journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Last Tuesday Lisa (1) ___________ from London to Madrid. She (2) ___________ up at 6 o’clock in the morning and (3) ___________ a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) ___________ home and (5) ___________ to the airport. When she (6) ___________ there, she (7) ___________ the car, (8) ___________ to the airport building, and (9) ___________ in. Then she (10) ___________ breakfast at a café and (11) ___________ for her flight. The plane (12) ___________ on time and (13) ___________ in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) ___________ a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).

1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday ___________ he went to work by car.
2 Rachel often loses her keys. She ___________ last week.
3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She ___________ yesterday evening.
4 I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I ___________
5 We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we ___________
6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I ___________
7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he ___________
8 Our friends often come to see us. They ___________ last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1 I ___________ to the theatre. 
2 ___________  
3 ___________  
4 ___________  
5 ___________  
6 ___________
I didn't ... Did you ...?
(past simple negative and questions)

We use did in past simple negatives and questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>I played</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>I play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>we start</td>
<td>did start</td>
<td>we start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>you watch</td>
<td>watched</td>
<td>you watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>they had</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>they have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>he saw</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>he see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>she did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>she do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>it went</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>it go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did not</td>
<td></td>
<td>(didn't)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

do/does (present) → did (past):

- I don't watch television very often.
  I didn't watch television yesterday.
- Does she often go away?
  Did she go away last week?

We use did/didn't + infinitive (watch/play/go etc.):

- I watched but I didn't watch
  they went did they go?
  he had he didn't have
  you did did you do?

I played tennis yesterday, but I didn't win.
'Did you do the shopping?' 'No, I didn't have time.'
We went to the cinema, but we didn't enjoy the film.

Study the word order in questions:

```plaintext
did + subject + infinitive
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>Did</th>
<th>your sister</th>
<th>phone</th>
<th>you?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>last night?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>the accident</td>
<td>happen?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>your parents</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>for their holiday?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

Yes, I/we/you/they he/she/it did.
No, I/we/you/they he/she/it didn't.

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I didn't.'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it did.'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she didn't.'
- 'Did your parents have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they did.'
Exercises

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1 I saw Barbara, but I didn't see Jane.
2 They worked on Monday, but they didn't work on Tuesday.
3 We went to the post office, but we didn't go to the bank.
4 She had a pen, but she didn't have any paper.
5 Jack did French at school, but he didn't know German.

12.2 Write questions with Did ... ?

1 I watched TV last night. How about you? Did you watch TV last night?
2 I enjoyed the party. How about you?
3 I had a good holiday. How about you?
4 I finished work early. How about you?
5 I slept well last night. How about you?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

1 (watch TV) I watched TV, or I didn't watch TV.
2 (get up before 7 o'clock) I
3 (have a shower)
4 (buy a magazine)
5 (eat meat)
6 (go to bed before 10.30)

12.4 Write B’s questions. Use:

arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time stay win

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A: We went to New York last month.</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>A: We came home by taxi.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B: Where did you stay?</td>
<td>B: How much?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A: I was late for the meeting.</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>A: I’m tired this morning.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B: What time?</td>
<td>B: How?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Half past nine.</td>
<td>A: No, but I didn’t sleep very well.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A: I played tennis this afternoon.</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>A: We went to the beach yesterday.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B:</td>
<td>B: How?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: No, I lost.</td>
<td>A: Yes, it was great.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A: I had a nice holiday.</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>A: The window is broken.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B: Good. Where?</td>
<td>B: How?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: To the mountains.</td>
<td>A: I don’t know.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.

1 We went to the cinema, but the film wasn’t very good. We didn’t enjoy it. (enjoy)
2 Tim bought some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
3 Did you have any rain yesterday? ‘No, it was a nice day.’ (rain)
4 We were tired, so we stayed long at the party. (stay)
5 It was very warm in the room, so I opened a window. (open)
6 ‘Did you phone Chris this morning?’ ‘No, I haven’t done it yet.’ (have)
7 ‘I cut my hand this morning.’ ‘How did it happen?’ (do)
8 ‘Why weren’t you at the meeting yesterday?’ ‘I don’t know about it.’ (know)
was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I he she it was doing watching playing swimming living etc.</td>
<td>I he she it was not (wasn’t) doing watching playing swimming living etc.</td>
<td>I he she it doing? watching? playing? swimming? living? etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you they were</td>
<td>we you they were not (weren’t)</td>
<td>we you they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
- 'What did he say?' ‘I don’t know. I wasn’t listening.’
- It was raining, so we didn’t go out.
- In 2001 we were living in Canada.
- Today she’s wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc.) → Appendix 5

am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m working (now).</td>
<td>I was working at 10.30 last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It isn’t raining (now).</td>
<td>It wasn’t raining when we went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you doing (now)?</td>
<td>What were you doing at three o’clock?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

was/were → Unit 10  I was doing and I did (past continuous and simple) → Unit 14
13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1. Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.
2. Jack and Kate ....... They .......... 
3. Tim .......... 
4. .......... 
5. .......... 
6. And you? I .......... 

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. At 8.45 she was washing her car.
2. At 10.45 she .......... 
3. At 8 o'clock .......... 
4. At 12.10 .......... 
5. At 7.15 .......... 
6. At 9.30 .......... 

13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1. (you/live) Where were you living in 1999? In London.
2. (you/do) .......... at 2 o'clock? I was asleep.
3. (it/rain) .......... when you got up? No, it was sunny.
4. (Sue/drive) .......... so fast? Because she was late.
5. (Tim/wear) .......... a suit yesterday? No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

Joe 1. (wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2. (carry / a bag) .......... 
3. (go / to the dentist) .......... 
4. (eat / an ice-cream) .......... 
5. (carry / an umbrella) .......... 
6. (go / home) .......... 
7. (wear / a hat) .......... 
8. (ride / a bicycle) ..........
Unit 14

I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

Jack was reading a book.

The phone rang.

He stopped reading.

He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang (past simple).
What was Jack doing when the phone rang? He was reading a book.

What did he do when the phone rang? He stopped reading and answered the phone.

Jack began reading before the phone rang.
So when the phone rang, he was reading.

he started reading

the phone rang

he stopped reading

he answered the phone

he was reading

past simple

A: What did you do yesterday morning?
B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

start 10 o'clock

finish 11.30

we played

complete action

past continuous

A: What were you doing at 10.30?
B: We were playing tennis.

start 10 o'clock

we were playing

unfinished action

Jack read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
Did you watch the film on television last night?
It didn’t rain while we were on holiday.

I started work at 9 o’clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
Kelly fell asleep while she was reading.
14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. Lucy ______________________ (break) her arm last week. It ______________________ (happen) when she ______________________ (paint) her room. She ______________________ (fall) off the ladder.

2. The train ______________________ (arrive) at the station and Paula ______________________ (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, ______________________ (wait) to meet her.

3. Yesterday Sue ______________________ (walk) along the road when she ______________________ (meet) James. He ______________________ (go) to the station to catch a train and he ______________________ (carry) a bag. They ______________________ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

1 A: What ______________________ (you/do) when the phone ______________________ (ring)?
B: I ______________________ (watch) television.

2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
B: Yes, she ______________________ (study).

3 A: What time ______________________ (the post / arrive) this morning?
B: It ______________________ (come) while I ______________________ (have) breakfast.

4 A: Was Tracey at work today?
B: No, she ______________________ (not/go) to work. She was ill.

5 A: How fast ______________________ (you/drive) when the police ______________________ (stop) you?
B: I'm not sure, but I ______________________ (not/drive) very fast.

6 A: ___________________________________________ (your team / win) the football match yesterday?
B: The weather was very bad, so we ______________________ (not/play).

7 A: How ______________________ (you/break) the window?
B: We ______________________ (play) football. I ______________________ (kick) the ball and it ______________________ (hit) the window.

8 A: ___________________________________________ (you/see) Jenny last night?
B: Yes, she ______________________ (wear) a very nice jacket.

9 A: What ______________________ (you/do) at 2 o’clock this morning?
B: I was asleep.

10 A: I ______________________ (lose) my key last night.
B: How ______________________ (you/get) into your room?
A: I ______________________ (climb) in through a window.

→ Additional exercises 14-15 (pages 257-58)
I have done (present perfect 1)

His shoes are dirty.  He is cleaning his shoes.  He has cleaned his shoes. (= his shoes are clean now)

They are at home.  They are going out.  They have gone out. (= they are not at home now)

has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>cleaned</th>
<th>finished</th>
<th>started</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>done</th>
<th>been</th>
<th>gone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>has</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>('ve)</td>
<td>(haven't)</td>
<td>(haven't)</td>
<td></td>
<td>('s)</td>
<td>(hasn't)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I have cleaned
we have finished
you have started
they have lost
he has done
she has been
it has gone

past participle

Regular verbs  The past participle is -ed (the same as the past simple):

- clean → I have cleaned
- finish → we have finished
- start → she has started

Irregular verbs  The past participle is not -ed.

- buy → I bought / I have bought
- have → he had / he has had

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

- see → you saw / you have seen
- go → they went / they have gone

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

- break → I broke / I have broken
- fall → it fell / it has fallen

We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- 'Where's Rebecca?' 'She's gone to bed.' (= she is in bed now)
- We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present. (= I don't have a present for her now)
- 'Bob is away on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?' (= where is he now?)
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it? (= do you need it now?)

present perfect → Units 16–19  present perfect and past simple → Unit 20  irregular verbs → Unit 24, Appendix 2–3
15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

| go to bed | clean his shoes | stop raining |
| close the door | fall down | have a shower |

before now

He has cleaned his shoes.

She ________________________________

They ________________________________

It ________________________________

He ________________________________

The ________________________________

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

break buy decide finish forget go go

invite read see not/see take tell not/tell

1 'Can I have a look at your newspaper?' ‘Yes, I’ve finished with it.’

2 I _____________________________ some new shoes. Do you want to see them?

3 ‘Where is Liz?’ ‘She’s not here. She ___________________________ out.’

4 I’m looking for Paula. ________________ you ________________ her?

5 Look! Somebody ___________________________ that window.

6 ‘Does Lisa know that you’re going away?’ ‘Yes, I ___________________________ her.’

7 I can’t find my umbrella. Somebody ___________________________ it.

8 ‘Where are my glasses?’ ‘I don’t know. I ___________________________ them.’

9 I’m looking for Sarah. Where ________________ she ________________ ?

10 I know that woman, but I ___________________________ her name.

11 Sue is having a party tonight. She ___________________________ a lot of people.

12 What are you going to do? ___________________________ ?

13 A: Does Bill know about the meeting tomorrow?

B: I don’t think so. I ___________________________ him.

14 ‘Do you want this magazine?’ ‘No, I ___________________________ it, thanks.’
I've just ...

*just* = a short time ago

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
  - B: Yes, they've just arrived.

- A: Are you hungry?
  - B: No, I've just had dinner.

- A: Is Tom here?
  - B: No, I'm afraid he's just gone.
    (= he has just gone)

I've already ...

*already* = before you expected / before I expected

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
  - B: They've already arrived.
    (= before you expected)

- It's only 9 o'clock and Anna has already gone to bed. (= before I expected)

- A: Jon, this is Emma.
  - B: Yes, I know. We've already met.

I haven't ... yet / Have you ... yet?

*yet* = until now

We use *yet* in negative sentences and questions. *Yet* is usually at the end.

**yet in negative sentences (I haven't ... yet)**

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
  - B: No, they haven't arrived yet.
    (but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)

- A: Does James know that you're going away?
  - B: No, I haven't told him yet.
    (but B is going to tell him soon)

- Silvia has bought a new dress, but she hasn't worn it yet.

**yet in questions (Have you ... yet?)**

- A: Have Diane and Paul arrived yet?
  - B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.

- A: Has Nicole started her new job yet?
  - B: No, she starts next week.

- A: This is my new dress.
  - B: Oh, it's nice. Have you worn it yet?
Exercises

16.1 Write a sentence with just for each picture.

1 They’ve just arrived.
2 He ________________________________________
3 They ______________________________________
4 The race ____________________________________

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

1 What time is Paul arriving? ____________________________
2 Do your friends want to see the film? No, they ____________________________
   ______________________________________
3 Don’t forget to phone Tom. ____________________________
4 When is Martin going away? I ______________________________________
   ______________________________________
5 Do you want to read the newspaper? He ______________________________________
6 When does Sarah start her new job? I ______________________________________
   ______________________________________
   ______________________________________
   ______________________________________
   ______________________________________

16.3 Write a sentence with just (They’ve just ... / She’s just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven’t ... yet / She hasn’t ... yet etc.).

1 a few minutes ago (she / go / out) ____________________________

   She hasn’t gone out yet.

2 a few minutes ago (the bus / go) ____________________________

   The bus ______________________________________

3 a few minutes ago (the train / leave) ____________________________

4 a few minutes ago (he / open / it) ____________________________

5 a few minutes ago (they / finish / their dinner) ____________________________

6 a few minutes ago (it / stop / raining) ____________________________

16.4 Write questions with yet.

1 Your friend has got a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
   ___________________________________________________________________
   Have you started your new job yet?

2 Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:
   ___________________________________________________________________
   you

3 Your friend must pay her phone bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:
   ___________________________________________________________________

4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom:
   ___________________________________________________________________
Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)

We use the present perfect (have been / have had / have played etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Have you been to France?' 'No, I haven't.'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've been to Canada, but I haven't been to the United States.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've seen that woman before, but I can't remember where.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (twice = two times)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:

- 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (once = one time)
- 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, I play a lot.'
- My sister has never travelled by plane.
- I've never ridden a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've never seen him before.'

gone and been

Bill has gone to Spain. (= he is in Spain now)
Bill has been to Spain. (= he went to Spain, but now he is back)

Compare:
- I can't find Susan. Where has she gone? (= where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?
17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning Have you ever ... ? Write the questions.

1 (London?) Have you ever been to London?
2 (play / golf?) Have you ever played golf?
3 (Australia?) Have you ever been to New York?
4 (lose / your passport?) Have you ever been to New York?
5 (fly / in a helicopter?) Have you ever been to New York?
6 (win / a race?) Have you ever been to New York?
7 (New York?) Have you ever been to New York?
8 (drive / a bus?) Have you ever been to New York?
9 (break / your leg?) Have you ever been to New York?

Helen

No, never.
Yes, many times.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
No, never.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

1 (New York) She’s been to New York twice.
2 (Australia) She
3 (win / a race)
4 (fly / in a helicopter)

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (New York) I
6 (play / tennis)
7 (drive / a lorry)
8 (be / late for work or school)

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

Mary

She has had many different jobs.

1
2
3
4
5
6

17.4 Write gone or been.

1 Bill is on holiday at the moment. He’s ______ to Spain.
2 ‘Where’s Jane?’ ‘She’s not here. I think she’s ______ to the bank.’
3 Hello, Sue. Where have you ______ ? I have you ______ to the bank.
4 ‘Have you ever ______ to Mexico?’ ‘No, never.’
5 My parents aren’t at home at the moment. They’ve ______ out.
6 There’s a new restaurant in town. Have you ______ to it?
7 Rebecca knows Paris well. She’s ______ there many times.
8 Helen was here earlier, but I think she’s ______ now.
Jane is on holiday in Ireland.
She is there now.
She arrived in Ireland on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long has she been in Ireland?
She has been in Ireland \(\text{since Monday.}\) \(\text{for three days.}\)

Compare \(\text{is}\) and \(\text{has been}\

\begin{align*}
\text{She} & \text{ is in Ireland now.} \\
\text{She has been in Ireland} & \text{ since Monday. for three days.}
\end{align*}

\(\text{is} = \text{present}\)

\(\text{has been} = \text{present perfect}\)

\(\text{Monday} \quad \text{now} \quad \text{Thursday}\)

Compare:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{Present simple} \hspace{1cm} \textit{Present perfect simple (have been / have lived / have known etc.)}
  \item Dan and Kate \textbf{are} married. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{They have been} married \textbf{for five years}.
    \textbf{(not They are married for five years.)}
  \item \textbf{Are} you married? \hspace{1cm} \textbf{How long have you been} married? \hspace{1cm}
    \textbf{(not How long are you married?)}
  \item \textbf{Do you know} Lisa? \hspace{1cm} \textbf{How long have you known} her? \hspace{1cm}
    \textbf{(not How long do you know her?)}
  \item I \textbf{know} Lisa. \hspace{1cm} I’ve \textbf{known} her \textbf{for a long time}.
    \textbf{(not I know her for ...)}
  \item Vicky \textbf{lives} in London. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{How long has} she \textbf{lived} in London?
    \textbf{She has lived} there \textbf{all her life}.
  \item I \textbf{have} a car. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{How long have you had} your car?
    \textbf{I’ve had it since April.}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{Present continuous} \hspace{1cm} \textit{Present perfect continuous (have been + -ing)}
  \item I’m \textbf{learning} German. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{How long have you been learning} German?
    \textbf{(not How long are you learning German?)}
    \textbf{I’ve been learning} German \textbf{for two years}.
  \item David \textbf{is watching} TV. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{How long has he been watching} TV?
    \textbf{He’s been (= He has been) watching TV since 5 o’clock.}
  \item It’s \textbf{raining}. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{It’s been (= It has been) raining all day.}
\end{itemize}
Exercises

18.1 Complete these sentences.
1 Jane is in Ireland. She has been in Ireland since Monday.
2 I know Lisa. I have known her for a long time.
3 Sarah and Andy are married. They have been married since 1999.
4 Brian is ill. He has been ill for the last few days.
5 We live in Scott Road. We have been there for a long time.
6 Catherine works in a bank. She has been in a bank for five years.
7 Alan has a headache. He has had a headache since he got up this morning.
8 I'm learning English. I have been learning English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with How long ...

1 Jane is on holiday.
2 Scott and Judy are in Brazil.
3 I know Amy.
4 Diana is learning Italian.
5 My brother lives in Canada.
6 I'm a teacher.
7 It is raining.

How long has she been on holiday?
How long have you been learning English?
How long have you been living in Brazil?

18.3

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for ten minutes  all day  all her life
for ten years  since he was 20  since Sunday

1 They have been married for ten years.
2 She...
3 They...
4 The sun...
5 She...
6 He...

18.4 Which is right?

1 Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
2 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
3 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
4 A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting/ have you been waiting?  
   B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5 Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6 Ruth is reading the newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'
8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
9 Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.
for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say **how long**:

- Jane is in Ireland. *She has been* there **since Monday**.

We use **for** + a period of time  
(three days / two years etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for three days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Richard has been in Canada for six months.* (not since six months)
- We’ve been waiting **for two hours**. (not since two hours)
- I’ve lived in London **for a long time**.

We use **since** + the start of the period  
(Monday / 9 o’clock etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>since</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 o’clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1985</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Richard has been in Canada since January.* (= from January to now)
- We’ve been waiting **since 9 o’clock**. (= from 9 o’clock to now)
- I’ve lived in London **since I was ten years old**.

ago

ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job **three weeks ago**. (= three weeks before now)
- ‘When did Tom go out?’ **‘Ten minutes ago’** (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago**.
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago**.

We use **ago** with the **past** (started/did/had/was etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did Jane arrive** in Ireland?  
  She **arrived** in Ireland **three days ago**.

- **How long has she been** in Ireland?  
  She **has been** in Ireland **for three days**.
19.1 Write for or since.
1 Jane has been in Ireland since Monday.
2 Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
3 My aunt has lived in Australia 15 years.
4 Jennifer is in her office. She has been there 7 o’clock.
5 India has been an independent country 1947.
6 The bus is late. We’ve been waiting 20 minutes.
7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty many years.
8 Michael has been ill a long time. He has been in hospital October.

19.2 Answer these questions. Use ago.
1 When was your last meal? Three hours ago.
2 When was the last time you were ill?
3 When did you last go to the cinema?
4 When was the last time you were in a car?
5 When was the last time you went on holiday?

19.3 Complete the sentences. Use for or ago with these words.
1 Jane arrived in Ireland three days ago.
2 Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
3 Lynn and Mark have been married 20 years.
4 Lynn and Mark got married 20 years ago.
5 Dan arrived an hour ago.
6 I bought these shoes a few days ago.
7 Silvia has been learning English six months ago.
8 Have you known Lisa? A long time ago.

19.4 Complete the sentences with for or since.
1 (Jane is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago)
   Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
   Jack has been here for three days.
3 (It’s raining – it started an hour ago)
   It’s been raining for an hour.
4 (I know Sue – I first met her in 2002)
   I’ve known Sue for ten years.
5 (Claire and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago)
   Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
6 (Liz is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago)
   Liz has been studying medicine for three years.
7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
   David has been playing the piano for ten years.

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:
   I’ve lived ... I’ve been ... I’ve been learning ... I’ve known ... I’ve had ...
   I’ve lived in this town for three years.

--- Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 258–60) ---
With a finished time (yesterday / last week etc.), we use the past (arrived/saw/was etc.):

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{past} & \text{finished time} \\
\hline
\text{We arrived} & \text{yesterday.} \\
& \text{last week.} \\
& \text{at 3 o’clock.} \\
& \text{in 2002.} \\
& \text{six months ago.} \\
\end{array}
\]

Do not use the present perfect (have arrived / have done / have been etc.) with a finished time:

- I saw Paula yesterday. \((\text{not I have seen})\)
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? \((\text{not Where have you been})\)
- We didn’t have a holiday last year. \((\text{not We haven’t had})\)
- ‘What did you do last night?’ ‘I stayed at home.’
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask When … ? or What time … ?:

- When did you buy your computer? \((\text{not When have you bought?})\)
- What time did Andy go out? \((\text{not What time has Andy gone out})\)

Compare:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{present perfect} & \text{past} \\
\hline
\text{I have lost my key.} & \text{I lost my key \textcolor{red}{last week}.} \\
\text{Ben has gone home.} & \text{Ben went home ten minutes ago.} \\
\text{Have you seen Kate?} & \text{Did you see Kate on Saturday?} \\
\hline
\text{time until now} & \text{finished time} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{past} & \text{now} \\
\hline
\text{Have you ever been to Spain?} & \text{Did you go to Spain \textcolor{red}{last year}?} \\
\text{My friend is a writer. He has written many books.} & \text{Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.} \\
\text{The letter hasn’t arrived yet.} & \text{The letter didn’t arrive \textcolor{red}{yesterday}.} \\
\text{We’ve lived in Singapore for six years.} & \text{We lived in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.} \\
\text{(= we live there \textcolor{red}{now})} & \text{(= in your life, until \textcolor{red}{now})} \\
\end{array}
\]
20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Have you seen Kate? Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
2. Have you started your new job? Yes, I started last week.
3. Have your friends arrived? Yes, they arrived at 5 o'clock.
4. Has Sarah gone away? Yes, she went away on Friday.
5. Have you worn your new suit? Yes, I wore it yesterday.

20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1. I've lost my key. I can't find it. (Did you see)
2. Have you seen Kate yesterday? (Did you see)
3. I've finished my work at 2 o'clock. (Did you see)
4. I'm ready now. I've finished my work. (Did you see)
5. What time have you finished your work? (Did you see)
6. Sue isn't here. She's gone out. (Did you see)
7. Steve's grandmother has died two years ago. (Did you see)
8. Where have you been last night? (Did you see)

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. My friend is a writer. He has written (write) many books.
2. We didn't have (not/have) a holiday last year.
3. I played (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time did you go (you/go) to bed last night?
5. Did you meet (you/ever/meet) a famous person?
6. The weather wasn't (not/be) very good yesterday.
7. Kathy travels a lot. She has visited (visit) many countries.
8. I switched (switch) off the light before going out this morning.
9. I live in New York now, but I have lived (live) in Mexico for many years.
10. 'What's Canada like? Is it beautiful?' 'I don't know. I have never (not/be) there.'

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. A: Have you ever been (you/ever/be) to Florida? B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago.
   A: Have you had (you/have) a good time? B: Yes, it was (be) great.

2. A: Where's Alan? (you/see) him? B: Yes, he's been (go) out a few minutes ago.
   A: And Rachel? B: I don't know. I didn't (not/see) her.

3. Rose works in a factory. She has worked (work) there for six months.
   Before that she was a waitress in a restaurant. She has enjoyed (not/enjoy) it very much.

4. A: Do you know Martin's sister? B: I've seen (see) her a few times, but I have never (never/speak) to her.
   A: Yes. I have met (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.

is done  was done (passive 1)

The office is cleaned every day.
The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

- Somebody cleans the office every day. (active)
- The office is cleaned every day. (passive)

- Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (active)
- The office was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

The passive is:

- **present simple**: am/is/are + cleaned/damaged etc.
- **past simple**: was/were + cleaned/done/built/taken etc.

The past participle of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged etc.).
For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100 years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone invented?
- We weren’t invited to the party last week.
- ‘Was anybody injured in the accident?’ ‘Yes, two people were taken to hospital.’

was/were born

- I was born in Berlin in 1989. (not I am born)
- ‘Where were you born?’ ‘In Cairo.’

passive + by ...

- The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- I was bitten by a dog a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They were painted by a friend of mine.
21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.

Sentences 1–7 are present.
1 (the office / clean / every day)  The office is cleaned every day.
2 (these rooms / clean / every day?) Are these rooms cleaned every day?
3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass
4 (stamps / sell / in a post office)
5 (this room / not / use / very often)
6 (we / allow / to park here?)
7 (how / this word / pronounce?)

Sentences 8–15 are past.
8 (the office / clean / yesterday)  The office was cleaned yesterday.
9 (the house / paint / last month)
10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago)
11 (three people / injure / in the accident)
12 (when / this bridge / build?)
13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise)
14 (how / these windows / break?)
15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?)

21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.
1 This house built 100 years ago. This house was built
2 Football plays in most countries of the world.
3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address?
4 A garage is a place where cars repair.
5 Where are you born?
6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland?
7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen.
8 When was invented the bicycle?

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:
clean damage find give invite make make show steal take
1 The room ______________________ every day.
2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people __________________ to hospital.
3 Paper ______________________ from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms ______________________.
5 ‘Where did you get this picture?’ ‘It ______________________ to me by a friend of mine.’
6 Many American programmes ______________________ on British television.
7 ‘Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?’ ‘No. They ______________________, but they didn’t go.’
8 ‘How old is this film?’ ‘It ______________________ in 1965.’
9 My car ______________________ last week, but the next day it ______________________ by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?
1 (Ian / Edinburgh)  Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2 (Sally / Manchester)  Sally
3 (her parents / Ireland)  Her
4 (you / ???)  I
5 (your mother / ???)
is being done  has been done
(passive 2)

is/are being ... (present continuous passive)

My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:
The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous)
The office is cleaned every day. (simple)
In Britain football matches are often played at the weekend, but
no matches are being played next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

has/have been ... (present perfect passive)

My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
Has this shirt been washed? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:
The room isn't dirty any more. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)
The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)
I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (present perfect)
My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.
22.1 What's happening?

1 The car ____________
2 A bridge ____________
3 The windows ____________
4 The grass ____________

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).

1 (the office / clean) ____________
2 (the shirts / iron) ____________
3 (the window / break) ____________
4 (the roof / repair) ____________
5 (the car / damage) ____________
6 (the houses / knock / down) ____________
7 (the trees / cut / down) ____________
8 (they / invite / to a party) ____________

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

1 I can't use my office at the moment. It ____________ (paint).
2 We didn't go to the party. We ____________ (not/invite).
3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It ____________ (repair).
4 The washing machine ____________ (repair) yesterday afternoon.
5 A factory is a place where things ____________ (make).
6 How old are these houses? When ____________ (they/build)?
7 A: __________________________ (the computer / use) at the moment?
   B: Yes, Steve is using it.
8 I've never seen these flowers before. What ____________ (they/call)?
9 My sunglasses ____________ (steal) at the beach yesterday.
10 The bridge is closed at the moment. It ____________ (not/repair) last week and it ____________ (not/repair) yet.
Unit 23

be/have/do in present and past tenses

A

**be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)**

- **am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)**
  - Units 3–4 and 25
  - Please be quiet. I’m working.
  - It isn’t raining at the moment.
  - What are you doing this evening?

- **was/were + -ing (past continuous)**
  - Unit 13
  - I was working when she arrived.
  - It wasn’t raining, so we didn’t need an umbrella.
  - What were you doing at 3 o’clock?

B

**be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)**

- **am/is/are + past participle (passive present simple)**
  - Unit 21
  - I’m never invited to parties.
  - Butter is made from milk.
  - These offices aren’t cleaned every day.

- **was/were + past participle (passive past simple)**
  - Unit 21
  - The office was cleaned yesterday.
  - These houses were built 100 years ago.
  - How was the window broken?
  - Where were you born?

C

**have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)**

- **have/has + past participle (present perfect)**
  - Units 15–18
  - I’ve cleaned my room.
  - Tom has lost his passport.
  - Kate hasn’t been to Canada.
  - Where have Paul and Nicole been?

D

**do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)**

- **do/does + infinitive (present simple negative and questions)**
  - Units 6–7
  - I like coffee, but I don’t like tea.
  - Chris doesn’t go out very often.
  - What do you usually do at weekends?
  - Does Silvia live alone?

- **did + infinitive (past simple negative and questions)**
  - Unit 12
  - I didn’t watch TV yesterday.
  - It didn’t rain last week.
  - What time did Paul and Nicole go out?
23.1 Write is/are or do/does.

1. Do you work in the evenings? 6. the sun shining?
2. Where are they going? 7. What time the shops close?
3. Why you looking at me? 8. Maria working today?
4. Bill live near you? 9. What this word mean?
5. you like cooking? 10. you feeling all right?

23.2 Write am not/isn’t/aren’t or don’t/doesn’t. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom doesn’t work at weekends.
2. I’m very tired. I want to go out this evening.
3. I’m very tired. I going out this evening.
4. Gary working this week. He’s on holiday.
5. My parents are usually at home. They go out very often.
6. Nicole has travelled a lot, but she speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the television. I watching it.
8. Liz has invited us to her party next week, but we going.

23.3 Write was/were/did/have/has.

1. Where your shoes made?
2. you go out last night?
3. What doing at 10.30?
4. Where your mother born?
5. Barbara gone home?
6. What time she go?
7. When these houses built?
8. Steve arrived yet?
9. Why you go home early?
10. How long they been married?

23.4 Write is/are/was/were/have/has.

1. Joe has lost his passport.
2. This bridge built ten years ago.
3. you finished your work yet?
4. This town is always clean. The streets cleaned every day.
5. Where you born?
6. I just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7. Glass made from sand.
8. This is a very old photograph. It taken a long time ago.

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>damage</th>
<th>rain</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>pronounce</th>
<th>eat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>listen</td>
<td>use</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I’m going to take an umbrella with me. It’s raining.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you them all?
4. How is your new job? Are you it?
5. My car was badly in the accident, but I was OK.
6. Chris has got a car, but she doesn’t it very often.
7. Mary isn’t at home. She has away for a few days.
8. I don’t the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Martin is in his room. He’s to music.
10. I don’t know how to say this word. How is it ?
11. How do you this window? Can you show me?
Regular and irregular verbs

Regular verbs
The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:
clean → cleaned  live → lived  paint → painted  study → studied

Past simple (→ Unit 11)
- I cleaned my room yesterday.
- Charlie studied engineering at university.

Past participle
have/has + past participle (present perfect → Units 15–18):
- I have cleaned my room.
- Tina has lived in London for ten years.

be (is/are/were/has been etc.) + past participle (passive → Units 21–22):
- These rooms are cleaned every day.
- My car has been repaired.

Irregular verbs
The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do not end in -ed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I made a cake yesterday. (past simple)
- I have made some coffee. (past participle − present perfect)
- Butter is made from milk. (past participle − passive present)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Somebody broke this window last night. (past simple)
- Somebody has broken this window. (past participle − present perfect)
- This window was broken last night. (past participle − passive past)

irregular verbs → Appendix 2–3 spelling (regular verbs) → Appendix 5
Exercises

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make ___________ 6 enjoy ___________ 11 hear ___________
2 cut ___________ 7 buy ___________ 12 put ___________
3 get ___________ 8 sit ___________ 13 catch ___________
4 bring ___________ 9 leave ___________ 14 watch ___________
5 pay ___________ 10 happen ___________ 15 understand ___________

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1 break ___________ broke ___________ broken ___________ 8 come ___________
2 begin ___________ 9 know ___________
3 eat ___________
4 drink ___________
5 drive ___________
6 speak ___________
7 write ___________
8 take ___________
9 go ___________
10 give ___________
11 throw ___________
12 forget ___________

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1 I ___________ washed my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2 Somebody has ___________ broken this window. (break)
3 I feel good. I ___________ slept very well last night. (sleep)
4 We ___________ saw a really good film yesterday. (see)
5 It ___________ rained a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6 I’ve ___________ lost my bag. (lose) Have you ___________ seen it? (see)
7 Rosa’s bicycle was ___________ stolen last week. (steal)
8 I ___________ went to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9 Have you ___________ finished your work yet? (finish)
10 The shopping centre was ___________ built about 20 years ago. (build)
11 Anna ___________ learned to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12 I’ve never ___________ ridden a horse. (ride)
13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I’ve ___________ known her for a long time. (know)
14 Yesterday I ___________ fell / hurt and ___________ broken my leg. (fall / hurt)
15 My brother ___________ ran in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever ___________ run a marathon? (run / run)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

cost  drive  fly  make  meet  sell  speak  swim  tell  think  wake up  win

1 I have ___________ made some coffee. Would you like some?
2 Have you ___________ ever John about your new job?
3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn’t play very well, but we ___________ the game.
4 I know Gary, but I’ve never ___________ him.
5 We were ___________ by loud music in the middle of the night.
6 Stephanie jumped into the river and ___________ to the other side.
7 ‘Did you like the film?’ ‘Yes, I ___________ it was very good.’
8 Many different languages are ___________ in the Philippines.
9 Our holiday ___________ a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10 Have you ___________ a very fast car?
11 All the tickets for the concert were ___________ very quickly.
12 A bird ___________ in through the open window while we were having our dinner.
What are you doing tomorrow?

They are playing tennis (now).

He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) for something happening now:
- ‘Where are Sue and Amanda?’ ‘They’re playing tennis in the park.’
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

We also use am/is/are + -ing for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):
- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I’m not working next week.

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:
- Sophie is going to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We’re having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting your friends tonight?
- What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- I’m not going out tonight. I’m staying at home.

You can also say ‘I’m going to do something’ (→ Unit 26).

Be careful! Do not use the present simple (I stay / do you go etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:
- I’m staying at home this evening. (not I stay)
- Are you going out tonight? (not Do you go)
- Lisa isn’t coming to the party next week. (not Lisa doesn’t come)

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:
- The train arrives at 7.30.
- What time does the film finish?

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present continuous (usually for people)</th>
<th>present simple (for timetables, programmes etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to a concert tomorrow.</td>
<td>The concert starts at 7.30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time are you leaving?</td>
<td>What time does your train leave?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

present continuous → Units 3–4  present simple → Units 5–7  I’m going to → Unit 26
25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

1. Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2. Richard is going to the cinema.
3. Rachel will be reading a novel.
4. Karen is having lunch with Ken.
5. Tom and Sue are going to a party.

25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?) Are you going out tonight?
2. (you / work / next week?)
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)
4. (what time / your friends / come?)
5. (when / Liz / go / on holiday?)

25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. I'm staying at home tonight.
2. I'm going to the theatre on Monday.
3. (fill in the blank with your plans)
4. (fill in the blank with your plans)
5. (fill in the blank with your plans)
6. (fill in the blank with your plans)

25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (the train leaves etc.).

1. "Are you going (you/go) out tonight?" 'No, I'm too tired.'
2. We're going (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts (it/start) at 7.30.
3. Do you know about Sally? She's getting (she/get) married next month!
4. A: My parents are going (go) on holiday next week.
   B: Oh, that's nice. Where are they going (they/go)?
5. Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course finishes (finish) on Friday.
6. There's a party tomorrow night, but I'm not going (I/not/go).
7. I'm going (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too?
8. I'm meeting (we/meet) outside the Royal Hotel at 8 o'clock.
9. A: How are you getting (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
   B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus leaves (leave) at midnight.
10. A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?
    B: Yes, what time does the film begin (the film / begin)?
11. A: What are you doing (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?
    B: I'm going to work (I/work).
I'm going to ...

I'm going to do something

She is going to watch TV this evening.

We use am/is/are going to ... for the future:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>do ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is</td>
<td>drink ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they are</td>
<td>watch ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| am | buy ...? |
| is | eat ...? |
| are | wear ...? |

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I decided to do it —— I'm going to do it

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the wedding next week?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.'
- Are you going to invite Martin to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 25):

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

Something is going to happen = we can see now that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
  (black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
  I'm going to be late.
  (9 o'clock now and not ready → late)
26.1 What are these people saying?

1. I'm going to watch TV.

2. (Blank)

3. Buy a new car now!

4. We (Blank)

26.2 Complete the sentences. Use going to + these verbs:

do eat give lie down stay walk wash watch wear

1. My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
2. What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3. It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I (Blank)
4. Steve is going to London next week. He (Blank) with some friends.
5. I'm hungry. I (Blank) this sandwich.
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. We (Blank) her a present.
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She (Blank) for an hour.
8. There's a good film on Channel 6 tonight. You (Blank) it?
9. What Rachel (Blank) when she leaves school?

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?

1. It's going to rain.
2. The shelf
3. The car
4. He

26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I'm
2. 
3. 

63
will/shall 1

Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8:30 until 4:30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

**will + infinitive (will be / will win / will come etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they he/she/it</th>
<th>will (I'll) will not (won't)</th>
<th>be win eat come etc.</th>
<th>will I/we/you/they he/she/it</th>
<th>be? win? eat? come? etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

'I'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll etc.
won't = will not: I won't (= I will not) / you won't / she won't etc.

**B**

We use will for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
- You can call me this evening. I'll be at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- Will you be at home this evening?
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say I think ... will ...

- I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- I don't think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the exam will be difficult?

**C**

We do not use will for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 25–26):

- We're going to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (not We will go)
- I'm not working tomorrow. (not I won't work)
- Are you going to do the exam? (not Will you do)

**D**

shall

You can say I shall (= I will) and we shall (= we will):

- I shall be late tomorrow. or I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we shall win. or I think we will (we'll) win.

But do not use shall with you/they/he/she/it:

- Tom will be late. (not Tom shall be)
Exercises

27.1 Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with she was, she's or she'll be.

2. Tomorrow __________________ in Amsterdam.
3. Last week __________________ in Barcelona.
4. Next week __________________ in London.
5. At the moment __________________ in Brussels.
6. Three days ago __________________ in Munich.
7. At the end of her trip __________________ very tired.

27.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:
I'll be ... or I'll probably be ... or I don't know where I'll be.

1. (at 10 o'clock tomorrow) __________________ I'll probably be on the beach.
2. (one hour from now) __________________
3. (at midnight tonight) __________________
4. (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon) __________________
5. (two years from now) __________________

27.3 Put in will (I'll) or won't.

1. Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You __________________ sleep.
2. 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not yet. I __________________ be ready in five minutes.'
3. I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I __________________ be at home tomorrow.
4. It __________________ rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5. A: I don't feel very well this evening.
   B: Well, go to bed early and you __________________ feel better in the morning.
6. It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He __________________ be 25.
7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It __________________ happen again.

27.4 Write sentences with I think ... or I don't think ....

1. (Kelly will pass the exam) __________________ I think Kelly will pass the exam.
2. (Kelly won't pass the exam) __________________ I don't think Kelly will pass the exam.
3. (we'll win the game) __________________
4. (I won't be here tomorrow) __________________
5. (Sue will like her present) __________________
6. (they won't get married) __________________
7. (you won't enjoy the film) __________________

27.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)

1. We'll go / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. (We're going is right)
2. 'What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing, I'm free.'
3. They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
4. I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
5. 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go / I'm going out.'
6. Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?
7. Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
8. Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
9. What are your plans for the weekend?
10. Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.
You can use I'll ... (I will) when you offer something or decide to do something:
- 'My bag is very heavy.'  I'll carry it for you.
- 'I'll phone you tomorrow, OK?'  'OK, bye.'

We often say I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ... when we decide to do something:
- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit outside.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

Do not use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:
- I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not I phone you)
- I think I'll go to bed. (not I go to bed)

Do not use I'll ... for something you decided before (→ Units 25–26):
- I'm working tomorrow. (not I'll work)
- There's a good film on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (not I'll watch)
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not What will you do)

Shall I ...? Shall we ...?

Shall I / Shall we ...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?
- It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?'  'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.'  'OK, what time shall we meet?'

What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25  I'm going to ... → Unit 26  will/shall 1 → Unit 27
Let's → Units 35, 53
Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + these verbs:

- carry
- do
- eat
- send
- show
- sit
- stay

1. My bag is very heavy. I'll carry __________________________ it for you.
2. Enjoy your holiday. Thank you. __________________________ you a postcard.
3. I don't want this banana. Well, I'm hungry. __________________________ it.
4. Do you want a chair? No, it's OK. __________________________ on the floor.
5. Did you phone Jenny? Oh no, I forgot. __________________________ it now.
6. Are you coming with me? No, I don't think so. __________________________ here.
7. How do you use this camera? Give it to me and __________________________ you.

28.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + these verbs:

- buy
- buy
- go
- have
- play

1. It's cold today. I don't think I'll go __________________________ out.
2. I'm hungry. I think I'll have __________________________ something to eat.
3. I feel very tired. I don't think I'll play tennis.
4. I like this hat. I don't think I'll buy __________________________ it.
5. This camera is too expensive. I don't think I'll buy __________________________ it.

28.3 Which is right?

1. I'll phone / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I'll phone is right)
2. I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3. I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5. Gerry is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. 'This letter is for Rose.' 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.'
7. A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening? B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
8. I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.

28.4 Write sentences with Shall I ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- make
- turn off
- open
- turn on

- some sandwiches
- the television
- the light
- the window

1. It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
2. This programme isn't very good. Shall I turn off the television?
3. I'm hungry. Shall I turn on the light?
4. It's dark in this room. Shall I open the window?

28.5 Write sentences with Shall we ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- what
- where
- what-time
- who
- buy
- invite
- go
- meet

1. Let's go out tonight. What time shall we meet?
2. Let's have a holiday. OK, when shall we go?
3. Let's spend some money. OK, what shall we buy?
4. Let's have a party. OK, what shall we invite?
might

Where are you going for your holidays?
I'm not sure. I might go to New York.

It might rain.

He might go to New York.
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

It might rain.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + infinitive (might go / might be / might rain etc.):

I/we/you/they
might (not)
go
play
come etc.

I might = it is possible that I will:
□ I might go to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
□ A: When is Rebecca going to phone you?
    B: I don't know. She might phone this afternoon.
□ Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
□ Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
□ ‘Are you going out tonight?’ ‘I might.’ (= I might go out)

Study the difference:
□ I'm playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
□ I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
□ Rebecca is going to phone later. (sure)
□ Rebecca might phone later. (possible)

I might not = it is possible that I will not:
□ I might not go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
□ Sue might not come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

may

You can use may in the same way. I may = I might:
□ I may go to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
□ Sue may not come to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I ...? = Is it OK to ...? / Can I ...?:
□ May I ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
□ ‘May I sit here?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
Exercises

29.1 Write sentences with might.
1 (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema) I might go to the cinema.
2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I
3 (it's possible that Sarah will forget to phone) I
4 (it's possible that it will snow today) I
5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) I

Write sentences with might not.
6 (it's possible that Mark will not be here next week) I
7 (it's possible that I won't have time to go out) I

29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with I might.

fish    go away    Italy    Monday    a new car    taxi

1 Where are you going for your holidays? I'm not sure. I might go to Italy.
2 What are you doing at the weekend? I don't know. I
3 When will you see Kate again? I'm not sure. I
4 What are you going to have for dinner? I don't know. I
5 How are you going to get home tonight? I'm not sure. I
6 I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it? I haven't decided yet.

29.3 You ask Bill questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1 Are you playing tennis tomorrow? Yes, in the afternoon.
2 Are you going out tomorrow evening? Possibly.
3 Are you going to get up early? Perhaps.
4 Are you working tomorrow? No, I'm not.
5 Will you be at home tomorrow morning? Maybe.
6 Are you going to watch television? I might.
7 Are you going out in the afternoon? Yes, I am.
8 Are you going shopping? Perhaps.

Now write about Bill. Use might where necessary.
1 He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
2 He might go out tomorrow evening.
3 He
4
5
6
7
8

29.4 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.
1
2
3
can and could

I can play the piano.  
Could you open the door, please?

He can play the piano.

**can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they he/she/it</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>come etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they he/she/it</td>
<td>can't (cannot)</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>I/we/you/they he/she/it</td>
<td>do?</td>
<td>play?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I can do something = I know how to do it, or it is possible for me to do it:

- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian, but she can't speak Spanish.
- ‘Can you swim?’ ‘Yes, but I’m not a very good swimmer.’
- ‘Can you change twenty pounds?’ ‘I’m sorry, I can’t.’
- I’m having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel can’t come.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn’t:

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Maria came to Britain, she couldn’t understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night, but I couldn’t sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel couldn’t come.

**Can you ...? Could you ...? Can I ...? Could I ...?**

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things:

- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait ...?

We use Can I have ...? or Could I have ...? to ask for something:

- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Could I have ...?

Can I ...? or Could I ...? = is it OK to do something?:

- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gary, please? or ... could I speak ...?
Exercises

30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

1. Can you swim?
2. Can you play chess?
3. Can you ride a horse?
4. Can you run 10 kilometres?
5. Can you drive?
6. Can you cook?

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can’t.

7. I can’t swim.
8. I can play chess.
9. I can’t ride a horse.
10. I can run 10 kilometres.
11. I can drive.
12. I can’t cook.

30.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can’t + one of these verbs:

come — find — hear — see — speak

1. I’m sorry, but we can’t come to your party next Saturday.
2. I like this hotel room. You can hear the mountains from the window.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I can’t hear you.
4. Have you seen my bag? I can’t find it.
5. Catherine got the job because she can speak five languages.

30.3 Complete these sentences. Use can’t or couldn’t + one of these verbs:

decide — eat — find — go — go — sleep

1. I was tired, but I couldn’t sleep.
2. I wasn’t hungry yesterday. I didn’t eat my dinner.
3. Kate doesn’t know what to do. She can’t decide.
4. I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday, but I couldn’t find him.
5. James can’t go to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6. Paula couldn’t go to the meeting last week. She was ill.

30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use can or could.

1. (open) Could you open the door, please?
2. (pass) Please pass me the salt.
3. (turn off) Please turn off the radio.
4. (have) Could you have a few minutes?
5. (look) Please look at the pictures.
6. (use) Could I use your phone, please?
must  mustn't  don't need to

**must + infinitive (must do / must work etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>must do</th>
<th>do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>must go</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>must see</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>must eat</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I must**(do something) = I need to do it:
- I'm very hungry. I must eat something.
- It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
- The windows are very dirty. We must clean them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **had to ...** *(not must):*
- I was very hungry. I had to eat something. *(not I must eat)*
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses. *(not We must walk)*

**mustn't**(= must not)

**I mustn't**(do something) = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:
- I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- I mustn't forget to phone Jane.
  (= I must remember to phone her)
- Be happy! You mustn't be sad. *(= don't be sad)*
- You mustn't touch the pictures.
  (= don't touch the pictures)

**don't need to**

**I don't need**(to do something) = it is not necessary:
- I don't need to go yet. I can stay a little longer.
- You don't need to shout. I can hear you OK.

You can also say **don't have to ... :**
- I don't have to go yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare **don't need to** and **mustn't**:
- You don't need to go. You can stay here if you want.
- You mustn't go. You must stay here.

I have to ... → Unit 33
31.1 Complete the sentences. Use must + these verbs:

be eat go learn meet wash win

1 I'm very hungry. I ___________ something.
2 Marilyn is a very interesting person. You ___________ her.
3 My hands are dirty. I ___________ them.
4 You ___________ to drive. It will be very useful.
5 I ___________ to the post office. I need some stamps.
6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We ___________.
7 You can't always have things immediately. You ___________ patient.

31.2 Write I must or I had to.

1 I ___________ walk home last night. There were no buses.
2 It's late. ___________ go now.
3 I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday ___________ work.
4 ___________ get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
5 I went to London by train last week. The train was full and ___________ stand all the way.
6 I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. ___________ run to get there on time.
7 I forgot to phone David yesterday. ___________ phone him later today.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use mustn't or don't need to + one of these verbs:

forget go hurry lose phone wait

1 I ___________ home yet. I can stay a little longer.
2 We have a lot of time. We ___________.
3 Keep these papers in a safe place. You ___________ them.
4 I'm not ready yet, but you ___________ for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
5 We ___________ to turn off the lights before we leave.
6 I must contact David, but I ___________ him – I can send him an email.

31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

1 We can leave the meeting early.
2 We must leave the meeting early.
3 We mustn't leave the meeting early.
4 We had to leave the meeting early.
5 We don't need to leave the meeting early.

A We must stay until the end.
B We couldn't stay until the end.
C We can't stay until the end.
D We can stay until the end.
E We don't need to stay until the end.

31.5 Write must / mustn't / had to / don't need to.

1 You ___________ go. You can stay here if you want.
2 It's a fantastic film. You ___________ see it.
3 The restaurant won't be busy tonight. We ___________ reserve a table.
4 I was very busy last week. I ___________ work every evening.
5 I want to know what happened. You ___________ tell me.
6 You ___________ tell Sue what happened. I don't want her to know.
7 I ___________ hurry or I'll be late.
8 'Why were you so late?' 'I ___________ wait half an hour for a bus.'
9 We ___________ decide now. We can decide later.
10 It's Lisa's birthday next week. I ___________ forget to buy her a present.
You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:
- Tom doesn’t study enough. He **should** study harder.
- It’s a good film. You **should** go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always watch the ball.

You **shouldn’t** do something = it is not a good thing to do.

**Shouldn’t** = should not:
- Tom **shouldn’t** go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn’t** watch TV so much.

We often say **I think ... should ...**

**I think ... should ... :**
- **I think** Lisa **should** buy some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It’s late. **I think** I **should** go home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
  B: Yes, I **think** you **should**.

**I don’t think ... should ... :**
- **I don’t think** you **should** work so hard.
  (= I don’t think it is a good idea.)
- **I don’t think** we **should** go yet. It’s too early.

**Do you think ... should ... ?:**
- **Do you think** I **should** buy this hat?
- What time **do you think** we **should** go home?

**Must** is stronger than **should**:
- It’s a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It’s a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:
- It’s a good film. You **ought to** go and see it. (= you should go)
- I think Lisa **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)
Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use you should + these verbs:

- eat
- go
- take
- visit
- watch
- wear

1. When you play tennis, ______ you should ______ the ball.
2. It’s late and you’re very tired. __________ to bed.
3. __________ plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4. If you have time, __________ the Science Museum. It’s very interesting.
5. When you’re driving, __________ a seat belt.
6. It’s too far to walk from here to the station. __________ a taxi.

32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use He/She shouldn’t ... so ... .

1. You watch TV too much.
   She shouldn’t watch TV so much.
2. You eat too much.
   __________
3. You work too hard.
   __________
   __________

32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with Do you think I should ... ?

1. You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think I should buy this jacket?
2. You can’t drive. (learn?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think
3. You don’t like your job. (get another job?)
   You ask your friend:
4. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
   You ask your friend:

32.4 Write sentences with I think ... should ... and I don’t think ... should ... .

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) I think we should go home now.
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) I don’t think you should buy it.
3. You don’t need your car. (sell it)
4. Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday)
5. Sally and Dan are too young. (get married)
6. You’re not well this morning. (go to work)
7. James isn’t well today. (go to the doctor)
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there)

32.5 What do you think? Write sentences with should.

1. I think everybody should learn another language.
2. I think everybody
3. I think
4. I don’t think
5. I think I should
I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they  have to do
he/she/it  has to do

to work

to go

to wear  etc.

☐ I’ll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
☐ Jane starts work at 7 o’clock, so she has to get up at 6.
☐ You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ...

☐ I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
☐ We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):

present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>have to ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| does | he/she/it | has to ...

| I/we/you/they | don’t have to ...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>doesn’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did</th>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>have to ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| he/she/it | had to ...

| I/we/you/they | didn’t have to ...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>didn’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

☐ What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
☐ Does Jane have to work on Sundays?
☐ Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don’t have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

☐ I’m not working tomorrow, so I don’t have to get up early.
☐ Ian doesn’t have to work very hard. He’s got an easy job.
☐ We didn’t have to wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

must and have to

You can use must or have to when you say what you think is necessary, when you give your opinion:

☐ It’s a fantastic film. You must see it.  or  You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (not must). Compare:

☐ Jane won’t be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor.
  (this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
☐ Jane isn’t well. She doesn’t want to go to the doctor, but I told her she must go.
  (this is my personal opinion)

must / mustn’t / don’t need to → Unit 31
33.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + these verbs:

**do**  **hit**  **read**  **speak**  **travel**  **wear**

1. My eyes are not very good. I **have to wear** glasses.
2. At the end of the course all the students **have to take** a test.
3. Sarah is studying literature. She **has to study** a lot of books.
4. Albert doesn't understand much English. You **have to explain** very slowly to him.
5. Kate is not often at home. She **has to work** a lot in her job.
6. In tennis you **have to serve** the ball over the net.

33.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + these verbs:

**answer**  **buy**  **change**  **go**  **walk**

1. We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. I **had to leave** now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I **had to get** some food.
4. This train doesn't go all the way to London. You **had to get** off at Bristol.
5. We did an exam yesterday. We **had to sit** six questions out of ten.

33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1. I have to get up early tomorrow. **What time do you have to get up?**
2. George had to wait a long time. **How long did you have to wait?**
3. Liz has to go somewhere. **Where is she going?**
4. We had to pay a lot of money. **How much did you have to pay?**
5. I have to do some work. **What exactly do you have to do?**

33.4 Write sentences with don't/doesn't/didn't have to ...

1. Why are you going out? You **don't have to go out.**
2. Why is Sue waiting? She **doesn't have to stay**.
3. Why did you get up early? You **didn't have to wake up.**
4. Why is Paul working so hard? He **has to work**.
5. Why do you want to leave now? We **don't have to leave.**

33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

1. It's a fantastic film. You **must see** / **have to see** it. (both are correct)
2. Julia won't be at work this afternoon. She **must go** / **has to go** to the doctor. (has to go is correct)
3. You can't park your car here for nothing. You **must pay** / **have to pay**.
4. I didn't have any money with me last night, so I **must borrow** / **had to borrow** some.
5. I eat too much chocolate. I really **must stop** / **have to stop**.
6. Paul is in a hurry. He **must meet** / **has to meet** somebody in five minutes.
7. What's wrong? You **must tell** / **have to tell** me. I want to help you.

33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1. (every day) **I have to travel ten miles every day.**
2. (every day) ____________________________
3. (yesterday) ____________________________
4. (tomorrow) ____________________________
Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?

We use Would you like ...? to offer things:

- **A:** Would you like some coffee?
  - **B:** No, thank you.

- **A:** Would you like a chocolate?
  - **B:** Yes, please.

- **A:** What would you like, tea or coffee?
  - **B:** Tea, please.

We use Would you like to ...? to invite somebody:

- **A:** Would you like to go for a walk?
  - **B:** Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)

- **A:** What would you like to do this evening?

I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. I'd like = I would like:

- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. I'd like to stay at home this evening.

Would you like ...? and Do you like ...?

**Would you like ...? / I'd like ...**

- Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?
  - **A:** Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
    - (= do you want to go tonight?)
  - **B:** Yes, I'd love to.

- I'd like an orange, please.
  - (= can I have an orange?)

- What would you like to do next weekend?

**Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?**

- **A:** Do you like going to the cinema? (in general)
  - **B:** Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.

- I like oranges. (in general)

- What do you like to do at weekends?
34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ... ?

1. Would you like a chocolate?

2. _____________________________

3. _____________________________

4. _____________________________

5. _____________________________

6. _____________________________

34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ... ?

1. You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
   You say: _____________________________

2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
   You say: _____________________________

3. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
   You say: _____________________________

4. It's raining and Sue is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
   You say: _____________________________

34.3 Which is right?

1. 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.' (Would you like is right)
2. 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
3. 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' 'No, thank you.'
4. 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
5. 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
6. 'I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7. 'What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
8. 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
9. 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
10. 'I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.'
11. 'I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.' 'Sure. What kind of sandwich?'
12. 'What kind of music do you like / would you like?' 'All kinds.'
We use *come*/*look*/*go*/*wait*/*do*/*be* etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

- 'Come here and look at this!'  'What is it?'
- I don’t want to talk to you. Go away!
- I’m not ready yet. Please wait for me.
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

*also*

- Bye! Have a good holiday! / Have a nice time! / Have a good flight! / Have fun! (= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- 'Have a chocolate.'  'Oh, thanks.' (= would you like a chocolate?)

We use *don’t* ... when we tell somebody not to do something:

- Be careful! Don’t fall.
- Please don’t go. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. Don’t be late.

You can say *Let’s* ... when you want people to do things with you. *Let’s* = Let us.

- It’s a nice day. Let’s go out.
  (= *you and I* can go out)
- Come on! Let’s dance.
  (= *you and I* can dance)
- Are you ready? Let’s go.
- Let’s have fish for dinner tonight.
- A: Shall we go out tonight?
  B: No, I’m tired. Let’s stay at home.

The negative is *Let’s* not ... :

- It’s cold. Let’s not go out. Let’s stay at home.
- Let’s not have fish for dinner tonight. Let’s have chicken.

Or you can say *Don’t* *let’s* ... :

- It’s cold. Don’t let’s go out. Let’s stay at home.
35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (buy/come etc.) and some are negative (don’t buy / don’t come etc.). Use these verbs:

be  buy  come  drink  drop  forget  have  sit  sleep  smile

1. Come __________!
2. Don’t drink __________!
3. It’s too expensive. __________!
4. OK, are you ready? __________!
5. __________ on the cat!
6. Bye! __________ a nice time!
7. __________ to phone me.
8. I’m going to bed now.
9. __________ careful with that vase. __________ it!

Don’t worry. I won’t.
OK. __________ well.

35.2 Complete the sentences. Use let’s with:
go for a swim  go to a restaurant  take a taxi  wait a little  watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis? __________
2. Do you want to walk home? __________
3. Shall I put a CD on? __________
4. Shall we have dinner at home? __________
5. Would you like to go now? __________

6. No, __________ go for a swim __________.
7. No, __________ go to a restaurant __________.
8. No, __________ take a taxi __________.
9. No, __________ wait a little __________.
10. No, __________ watch TV __________.

35.3 Answer with No, don’t … or No, let’s not … .

1. Shall I wait for you? __________
2. Shall we go home now? __________
3. Shall we go out? __________
4. Do you want me to close the window? __________
5. Shall I phone you tonight? __________
6. Do you think we should wait for Andy? __________
7. Do you want me to turn on the light? __________
8. Shall we go by bus? __________

No, don’t wait for me. __________
No, let’s not go home yet. __________
Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn’t work there now:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he used to work</td>
<td>he works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say I used to work … / she used to have … / they used to be … etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>used to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>be work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have play</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books, but I don’t read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we used to see them a lot. But we don’t see them very often these days.
- Helen used to have a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn’t use to …:

- When I was a child, I didn’t use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to …?:

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

We use used to … only for the past. You cannot say ‘I use to …’ for the present:

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf)
- We usually get up early. (not We use to get up early)
36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to ...

1. This is me a few years ago.
   She used to have long hair.

2. When I was younger ...
   He used to play football.

3. I'm a hairdresser now.
   a taxi driver.

4. We live in London now.
   in the country.

5. This is me 20 years ago.
   I never wear glasses now.

6. A long time ago
   This building

36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen a few years ago

- Do you do any sport? Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.
- Do you go out much? Yes, most evenings.
- Do you play a musical instrument? Yes, the guitar.
- Do you like reading? Yes, I read a lot.
- Do you travel much? Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

Karen now

I work very hard in my job. I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with used to ...

1. She used to swim every day.
2. She
3. She

36.3 Complete these sentences. Use used to or the present simple (I play / he lives etc.).

1. I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2. 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play basketball.'
3. 'Have you got a car?' 'No, I used to have one, but I sold it.'
4. George used to be a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
5. 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes, but most days I used to take the train.'
6. When I was a child, I never used to eat meat, but I eat it now.
7. Mary loves watching TV. She watches TV every evening.
8. We used to live near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
9. Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I used to get up very early.
10. What games did you play when you were a child?
there is  there are

singular

there is ...  (there's)

is there ...?

there is not ...

(there isn't

or there's not)

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's nothing on TV tonight.
- A: Have you got any money?
  B: Yes, there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

plural

there are ...

are there ...?

there are not ...

(there aren't)

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any restaurants near here?
  B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

there is and it is

there is

There's a book on the table.
(not It's a book on the table.)

it is

I like this book. It's interesting.
(It = this book)

Compare:

- 'What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (It = that noise)
  There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (It = the 10.30 train)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (It = this soup)

there was / were / has been etc. → Unit 38  it and there → Unit 39  some and any → Unit 76
Exercises

37.1 Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with There is/are or There isn't/aren't.

| 1 a castle? | No |
| 2 any restaurants? | Yes (a lot) |
| 3 a hospital? | Yes |
| 4 a swimming pool? | No |
| 5 any cinemas? | Yes (two) |
| 6 a university? | No |
| 7 any big hotels? | No |

1. There isn't a castle.
2. There are a lot of restaurants.
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 

37.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use There is/are or There isn't/aren't.

1. There are a few restaurants.
2. There's a big park.
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

37.3 Write there is / there isn't / is there or there are / there aren't / are there.

1. Kentham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
2. Look! a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
3. 'Excuse me, a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'
4. five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5. 'How many students in the class?' 'Twenty.'
6. The road is usually very quiet. much traffic.
7. a bus from the city centre to the airport?' 'Yes, every 20 minutes.'
8. any problems? 'No, everything is OK.'
9. nowhere to sit down. any chairs.

37.4 Write sentences with There are .... Choose from the boxes.

| seven | twenty-six |
| eight | thirty |
| fifteen | fifty |
| letters | days |
| players | days |
| planets | states |
| September | the solar system |
| the USA | a-week |
| a rugby team | the English alphabet |

1. There are seven days in a week.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 

37.5 Write there's / is there or it's / is it.

1. There's a train at 10.30. Is it a fast train?
2. I'm not going to buy this shirt. too expensive.
3. 'What's wrong?' something in my eye.
4. a red car outside your house. yours?
5. anything good on TV tonight? 'Yes, a film at 8.15.'
6. 'What's that building?' a school.
7. a restaurant in this hotel? 'No, I'm afraid not.'
there was/were  there has/have been  there will be

definitions
there was / there were (past)

There is a train every hour.
The time now is 11:15.
There was a train at 11 o’clock.

Compare:

there is/are (present)
- There is a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel.
  There are 550 rooms.
- Are there any phone messages for me this morning?
- I’m hungry, but there isn’t anything to eat.

there was/were (past)
- There was a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel.
  There were 550 rooms.
- Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?
- I was hungry when I got home, but there wasn’t anything to eat.

there has been / there have been (present perfect)

Look! There’s been an accident.
(there’s been = there has been)
- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

Compare there was (past):
- There was an accident last night.
  (not There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

discussion
there will be

- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
- I’m going away tomorrow. I’ll do my packing today because there won’t be time tomorrow.
  (there won’t be = there will not be)

was/were → Unit 10  has/have been → Units 15–18  will → Unit 27  there is/are → Unit 37
there and it → Units 37, 39  some and any → Unit 76
38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with There was ... or There were ... .

an armchair    a carpet    some flowers    a sofa
some books    a clock    three pictures    a small table

1 There was a clock on the wall near the window.
2 __________________ on the floor.
3 __________________ on the wall near the door.
4 __________________ in the middle of the room.
5 __________________ on the table.
6 __________________ on the shelves.
7 __________________ in the corner near the door.
8 __________________ opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write there was / there wasn’t / was there or there were / there weren’t / were there.

1 I was hungry, but _______ anything to eat.
2 __________ any phone messages for me yesterday?
3 I opened the envelope, but it was empty. _______ nothing in it.
4 ‘We stayed at a very nice hotel.’ ‘Really? _______ a swimming pool?’
5 ‘Did you buy any eggs?’ ‘No, _______ any in the shop.’
6 The wallet was empty. _______ any money in it.
7 ‘_________ many people at the meeting?’ ‘No, very few.’
8 We didn’t visit the museum. _______ enough time.
9 I’m sorry I’m late. _______ a lot of traffic.
10 Twenty years ago _______ many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.

1 There was a good film on TV last night.
2 __________________ 24 hours in a day.
3 __________________ a party at the club last Friday, but I didn’t go.
4 ‘Where can I buy a newspaper?’ ‘_________________ a shop at the end of the street.’
5 ‘Why are those policemen outside the bank?’ ‘_________________ a robbery.’
6 When we arrived at the theatre, __________________ a long queue outside.
7 When you arrive tomorrow, __________________ somebody at the station to meet you.
8 Ten years ago __________________ 500 children at the school. Now
   __________________ more than a thousand.
9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It’s very different now.
   __________________ a lot of changes.
10 I think everything will be OK. I don’t think __________________ any problems.
We use *it* for time/day/distance/weather:

**time**
- What time is *it*?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

**day**
- What day is *it*?
- It's Thursday.
- It's 16 March.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

**distance**
- It’s three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- How far is *it* from New York to Los Angeles?
- It’s a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. It isn’t far.

We use *far* in questions (is *it* far?) and negatives (it isn’t far). In positive sentences, we use a long way (it’s a long way).

**weather**
- It’s raining. It isn’t raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn’t rain yesterday.
- Does it snow very often?
- It’s warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- It’s a nice day today.

Compare *it* and *there*:
- It rains a lot in winter.
  - There is a lot of rain in winter.
- It was very windy.
  - There was a strong wind yesterday.

It’s nice to … etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It’s easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.</th>
<th>to …</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s nice to see you again.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It’s impossible to understand her.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It wasn’t easy to find your house.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Don’t forget it:
- It’s raining again. (not Is raining again)
- Is it true that you’re going away? (not Is true that …)
39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It’s ... .

1. It’s raining.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

39.2 Write it is (it’s) or is it.
1. What time is it?
2. We must go now. very late.
3. true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. ‘What day today? Tuesday?’ ‘No, Wednesday.’
5. ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6. possible to phone you at your office?
7. ‘Do you want to walk to the hotel?’ ‘I don’t know. How far ?’
8. Lisa’s birthday today. She’s 27.
9. I don’t believe it! impossible.

39.3 Write questions with How far ... ?
1. (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2. (the hotel / the beach) How
3. (New York / Washington) How
4. (your house / the airport) How

39.4 Write it or there.
1. The weather isn’t so nice today. It’s cloudy.
2. There was a strong wind yesterday.
3. hot in this room. Open a window.
4. was a nice day yesterday. was warm and sunny.
5. was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6. I was afraid because was very dark.
7. ’s often cold here, but isn’t much rain.
8. ’s a long way from here to the nearest shop.

39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>it’s</th>
<th>work in this office</th>
<th>get-up early</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>interesting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. If you go to bed late, it’s difficult to get up early in the morning.
2. Hello, Jane. How are you?
3. There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work.
5. I like travelling.
6. Some cities are not safe.... at night.
I am, I don't etc.

She isn’t tired, but he is. 
(he is = he is tired)

He likes tea, but she doesn’t. 
(she doesn’t = she doesn’t like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words (‘he is tired’, ‘she doesn’t like tea’).

You can use these verbs in the same way:

- **am/is/are**
  - I haven’t got a car, but my sister has. (= my sister has got a car)
  - A: Please help me. 
    - B: I’m sorry. I can’t. (= I can’t help you)
  - A: Are you tired? 
    - B: I was, but I’m not now. (= I was tired, but I’m not tired now)

- **was/were**

- **have/has**
  - A: Do you think Jane will phone this evening? 
    - B: She might. (= she might phone)

- **do/does/did**
  - A: Are you going now? 
    - B: Yes, I’m afraid I must. (= I must go)

- **can**

- **will**

- **might**

- **must**

You cannot use ’m/’s/’ve etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use am/is/have etc.:

- She isn’t tired, but he is.  (not … but he’s)

But you can use isn’t / haven’t / won’t etc. (negative short forms):

- My sister has got a car, but I haven’t.
  - ‘Are you and Jane working tomorrow?’ ‘I am, but Jane isn’t.’

You can use I am / I’m not etc. after Yes and No:

- ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.’
  - ‘Will Alan be here tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, he will. / No, he won’t.’
  - ‘Is there a bus to the airport?’ ‘Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.’

We use do/does for the present simple (→ Units 6-7):

- I don’t like hot weather, but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I don’t. (= I don’t work hard)
- ‘Do you enjoy your work?’ ‘Yes, I do.’

We use did for the past simple (→ Unit 12):

- A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?
  - B: I did, but Chris didn’t. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn’t enjoy it)
  - ‘I had a good time.’ ‘I did too.’ (= I enjoyed it too)
- ‘Did it rain yesterday?’ ‘No, it didn’t.’

have you? / don’t you? etc. → Unit 41  so am I / neither do I etc. → Unit 42
40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.

1 Kate wasn’t hungry, but we ___________. 4 I haven’t seen the film, but Tom ___________.
2 I’m not married, but my brother ___________. 5 Karen won’t be here, but Chris ___________.
3 Bill can’t help you, but I ___________. 6 You weren’t late, but I ___________.

40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/can’t etc.).

1 My sister can play the piano, but I ___________. 4 Mark has been to China, but I ___________.
2 Sam is working today, but I ___________. 5 I’m ready to go, but Tom ___________.
3 I was working, but my friends ___________. 6 I’ve got a key, but Sally ___________.

40.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.

1 I don’t like hot weather, but Sue ___________.
2 Sue likes hot weather, but I ___________.
3 My mother wears glasses, but my father ___________.
4 You don’t know Paul very well, but I ___________.
5 I didn’t enjoy the party, but my friends ___________.
6 I don’t watch TV much, but Peter ___________.
7 Kate lives in London, but her parents ___________.
8 You had breakfast this morning, but I ___________.

40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1 I didn’t ___________ last night, but my friends ___________.
2 I like ___________, but ___________.
3 I don’t ___________, but ___________.
4 I’m ___________.
5 I haven’t ___________.

40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

1 ‘Are you tired?’ ‘I ___________ earlier, but I’m not now.’
2 Steve is happy today, but he ___________ yesterday.
3 The post office isn’t open yet, but the shops ___________.
4 I haven’t got a telescope, but I know somebody who ___________.
5 I would like to help you, but I’m afraid I ___________.
6 I don’t usually go to work by car, but I ___________ yesterday.
7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
   B: No, but Sandra ___________. She went there on holiday last year.
8 ‘Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?’ ‘I ___________, but Chris doesn’t.’
9 I’ve been invited to Sam’s wedding, but Kate ___________.
10 ‘Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?’ ‘Yes, I’m sure she ___________.’
11 ‘Are you going out tonight?’ ‘I ___________. I don’t know for sure.’

40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I’m not. etc.

1 Are you American?
2 Have you got a car?
3 Do you feel OK?
4 Is it snowing?
5 Are you hungry?
6 Do you like classical music?
7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow?
8 Have you ever broken your arm?
9 Did you buy anything yesterday?
10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.?
You can say *have you? / is it? / can't he?* etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:
- 'You're late.'   'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.'   'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.'   'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- 'There's a letter for you.'   'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.'   'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.'   'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.'   'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use *do/does* for the *present simple*, and *did* for the *past simple*:
- 'I speak four languages.'   'Do you? Which ones?'
- 'Tim doesn't eat meat.'   'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Nicole got married last week.'   'Did she? Really?'

**Question tags**

You can use *have you? / is it? / can't she?* etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are question tags.

*positive sentence → negative question tag*

- It's a beautiful day, *isn't it?*
- Sally lives in London, *doesn't she?*
- You closed the window, *didn't you?*
- Those shoes are nice, *aren't they?*
- Tom will be here soon, *won't he?*

*negative sentence → positive question tag*

- That isn't your car, *is it?*
- You haven't met my mother, *have you?*
- Sally doesn't go out much, *does she?*
- You won't be late, *will you?*
41.1 Answer with Do you? / Doesn't she? / Did they? etc.

1. I speak four languages. \(\text{Do you}\) ? Which ones?
2. I work in a bank. \(\text{Do you}\) ? I work in a bank too.
3. I didn't go to work yesterday. \(\text{Do you}\) ? Were you ill?
4. Jane doesn't like me. \(\text{Do you}\) ? Why not?
5. You look tired. \(\text{Do you}\) ? I feel fine.
6. Kate phoned me last night. \(\text{Do you}\) ? What did she say?

41.2 Answer with Have you? / Haven't you? / Did she? / Didn't she? etc.

1. I've bought a new car. \(\text{Have you}\) ? What make is it?
2. Tim doesn't eat meat. \(\text{Have you}\) ? Does he eat fish?
3. I've lost my key. \(\text{Have you}\) ? When did you last have it?
4. Sue can't drive. \(\text{Have you}\) ? She should learn.
5. I was born in Italy. \(\text{Have you}\) ? I didn't know that.
6. I didn't sleep well last night. \(\text{Have you}\) ? Was the bed uncomfortable?
7. There's a film on TV tonight. \(\text{Have you}\) ? Are you going to watch it?
8. I'm not happy. \(\text{Have you}\) ? Why not?
9. I saw Paula last week. \(\text{Have you}\) ? How is she?
10. Maria works in a factory. \(\text{Have you}\) ? What kind of factory?
11. I won't be here next week. \(\text{Have you}\) ? Where will you be?
12. The clock isn't working. \(\text{Have you}\) ? It was working yesterday.

41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn't it? / haven't you? etc.).

1. It's a beautiful day, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, it's perfect.
2. These flowers are nice, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, what are they?
3. Jane was at the party, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4. You've been to Paris, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, many times.
5. You speak German, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, but not very well.
6. Martin looks tired, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, he works very hard.
7. You'll help me, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, of course I will.

41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative (isn't it? / don't you? etc.).

1. You haven't got a car, \(\text{have you}\) ? No, I can't drive.
2. You aren't tired, \(\text{have you}\) ? No, I feel fine.
3. Lisa is a very nice person, \(\text{isn't she}\) ? Yes, everybody likes her.
4. You can play the piano, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, but I'm not very good.
5. You don't know Mike's sister, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? No, I've never met her.
6. Sarah went to university, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? Yes, she studied psychology.
7. The film wasn't very good, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? No, it was terrible.
8. Anna lives near you, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? That's right. In the same street.
9. You won't tell anybody what I said, \(\text{isn't it}\) ? No, of course not.
too/either so am I / neither do I etc.

A too and either

We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a positive verb:

- A: I’m happy.
  - B: I’m happy **too**.
- A: I enjoyed the film.
  - B: I enjoyed it **too**.
- A: Jane is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a negative verb:

- A: I’m not happy.
  - B: I’m not happy **either**.
- A: I can’t cook.
  - B: I can’t **either**.
- A: Bill doesn’t watch TV. He **doesn’t read newspapers either**.

B so am I / neither do I etc.

We use **so am I** or **neither do I** after a positive verb.

- A: I’m happy.
  - B: **So am I**.

We use **neither** after a negative verb.

- A: I’m not happy.
  - B: I’m not happy **neither**.

We use **so am I** or **neither do I** to agree or disagree with someone else.

**so am I** = I am too

- A: I’m working.
  - B: So am I. (= I am working too)
- A: I was late for work today.
  - B: So was Sam. (= Sam was late too)
- A: I work in a bank.
  - B: So do I.
- A: We went to the cinema last night.
  - B: Did you? **So did we**.
- A: I’d like to go to Australia.
  - B: **So would I**.

**neither am I** = I am not either

- A: I haven’t got a key.
  - B: Neither have I. (= I haven’t either)
- A: I can’t cook.
  - B: Neither can I. (= Tom can’t either)
- A: I won’t (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  - B: Neither will I.
- A: I never go to the cinema.
  - B: Neither do I.

Remember: **So am I** (not So I am), **Neither have I** (not Neither I have).

I am / I don’t etc. → Unit 40
Exercises

Unit 42

42.1 Write too or either.

1. I'm happy.
2. I'm not hungry.
3. I'm going out.
4. It rained on Saturday.
5. Jenny can't drive a car.
6. I don't like shopping.
7. Emma's mother is a teacher.

8. I'm happy too.
9. I'm not hungry .
10. I'm going out .
11. It rained on Sunday.
12. She can't ride a bicycle.
13. I don't like shopping.
14. Her father is a teacher.

42.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

1. I went to bed late last night.
2. I'm thirsty.
3. I've just had dinner.
4. I need a holiday.
5. I'll be late tomorrow.
6. I was very tired this morning.

7. So did I.
8. 
9. 
10. 
11. 

42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:

Maria: I'm tired today. I don't work hard.

You can answer: So am I. or I'm not.
You can answer: Neither do I. or I do.

1. I'm learning English.
2. I can ride a bicycle.
3. I'm not American.
4. I like cooking.
5. I don't like cold weather.
6. I slept well last night.
7. I've never been to Scotland.
8. I don't use my phone much.
9. I'm going out tomorrow evening.
10. I haven't got a headache.
11. I didn't watch TV last night.
12. I go to the cinema a lot.
Unit 43
isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

We use **not** (n’t) in negative sentences:

positive → negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>am not (*’m not)</th>
<th>□ I’m not tired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>is not (isn’t or ’s not)</td>
<td>□ It isn’t (or It’s not) raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not (aren’t or ’re not)</td>
<td>□ They aren’t (or They’re not) here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>□ Julian wasn’t hungry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren’t)</td>
<td>□ The shops weren’t open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have not (haven’t)</td>
<td>□ I haven’t finished my work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has not (hasn’t)</td>
<td>□ Sue hasn’t got a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will not (won’t)</td>
<td>□ We won’t be here tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>cannot (can’t)</td>
<td>□ George can’t drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>could not (couldn’t)</td>
<td>□ I couldn’t sleep last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>must not (mustn’t)</td>
<td>□ I mustn’t forget to phone Jane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>should not (shouldn’t)</td>
<td>□ You shouldn’t work so hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>would not (wouldn’t)</td>
<td>□ I wouldn’t like to be an actor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**don’t/doesn’t/didn’t**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple negative</th>
<th>I/we/you/they do not (don’t)</th>
<th>does not (doesn’t)</th>
<th>work/live/go etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple negative</td>
<td>I/we/you/they did not (didn’t)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**positive → negative**

- I want to go out. → I don’t want to go out.
- They work hard. → They don’t work hard.
- Liz plays the guitar. → Liz doesn’t play the guitar.
- My father likes his job. → My father doesn’t like his job.
- I got up early this morning. → I didn’t get up early this morning.
- They worked hard yesterday. → They didn’t work hard yesterday.
- We played tennis. → We didn’t play tennis.
- Diane had dinner with us. → Diane didn’t have dinner with us.

Don’t ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Look!</th>
<th>Don’t look!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wait for me.</td>
<td>Don’t wait for me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don’t do** / **doesn’t do** / **didn’t do**):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do something!</th>
<th>Don’t do anything!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sue does a lot at weekends.</td>
<td>Sue doesn’t do much at weekends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I did what you said.</td>
<td>I didn’t do what you said.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

present simple negative → **Unit 6**  past simple negative → **Unit 12**  don’t look / don’t wait etc. → **Unit 35**

Why isn’t/don’t ... ? → **Unit 44**
Exercises

43.1 Make these sentences negative.
1. He’s gone away. **He hasn’t gone away.**
2. They’re married.
3. I’ve had dinner.
4. It’s cold today.
5. We’ll be late.
6. You should go.

43.2 Make these sentences negative. Use don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.
1. She saw me. **She didn’t see me.**
2. I like cheese.
3. They understood.
4. He lives here.
5. Go away!
6. I did the shopping.

43.3 Make these sentences negative.
1. She can swim. **She can’t swim.**
2. They’ve arrived.
3. I went to the bank.
4. He speaks German.
5. We were angry.
6. He’ll be pleased.
7. Phone me tonight.
8. It rained yesterday.
9. I could hear them.
10. I believe you.

43.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/don’t etc.).
1. They aren’t rich. They **haven’t** got much money.
2. ‘Would you like something to eat?’ ‘No, thank you. I **haven’t** got hungry.’
3. I **haven’t** find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4. Steve **doesn’t** use email much. He prefers to talk on the phone.
5. We can walk to the station from here. It **will** rain very far.
6. ‘Where’s Jane?’ ‘I **haven’t** seen, know. I **haven’t** seen her today.’
7. Be careful! **Don’t** fall!
8. We went to the cinema last night. I **didn’t** like the film very much.
9. I’ve been to Japan many times, but I **haven’t** been to Korea.
10. Julia **will** be here tomorrow. She’s going away.
11. ‘Who broke that window?’ ‘Not me. I **don’t** do it.’
12. We didn’t see what happened. We **didn’t** looking at the time.
13. Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she **won’t** worn it yet.
14. You **will** drive so fast. It’s dangerous.

43.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers ‘Yes’ or ‘No’. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

**Gary**

You

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Gary's Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live in London?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were you born in London?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like London?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you like to live in the country?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you drive?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you read newspapers?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in politics?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you watch TV most evenings?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you watch TV last night?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you go out last night?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)

**Unit 44**

**A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>are</th>
<th>You are eating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>Are you eating? What are you eating?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive subject + verb</th>
<th>question verb + subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am late.</td>
<td>Am I late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That seat is free.</td>
<td>Is that seat free?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was angry.</td>
<td>Why was she angry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David has gone.</td>
<td>Where has David gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have got a car.</td>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will be here soon.</td>
<td>When will they be here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paula can swim.</td>
<td>Can Paula swim?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where has David gone? (not Where has gone David?)
- Are those people waiting for something? (not Are waiting ... ?)
- When was the telephone invented? (not When was invented ... ?)

**B**

do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?

**Present simple questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>I/we/you/they work/live/go etc. ... ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he/she/it work/live/go etc. ... ?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past simple questions**

| did | I/they/he/she etc. work/live/go etc. ... ? |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They work hard.</td>
<td>Do they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You watch television.</td>
<td>How often do you watch television?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris works hard.</td>
<td>Does Chris work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She gets up early.</td>
<td>What time does she get up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They worked hard.</td>
<td>Did they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You had dinner.</td>
<td>What did you have for dinner?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She got up early.</td>
<td>What time did she get up?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes do is the main verb (do you do / did he do etc.):

- What do you usually do at weekends?
- ‘What does your brother do?’ ‘He works in a bank.’
- ‘I broke my finger last week.’ ‘How did you do that?’ (not How did you that?)

**C**

Why isn’t ... ? / Why don’t ... ? etc. (Why + negative):

- Where’s John? Why isn’t he here? (not Why he isn’t here?)
- Why can’t Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (not Why Paula can’t ... ?)
- Why didn’t you phone me last night?
Exercises

44.1 Write questions.

1. I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim?
2. I work hard. (and Jack?) Does Jack work hard?
3. I was late this morning. (and you?)
4. I've got a key. (and Kate?)
5. I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?)
6. I'm going out this evening. (and Paul?)
7. I like my job. (and you?)
8. I live near here. (and Nicole?)
9. I enjoyed the film. (and you?)
10. I had a good holiday. (and you?)

44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You

1. (have / a car?) Have you got a car?
2. (use / a lot?) It
3. (use / yesterday?)
4. (enjoy driving?)
5. (a good driver?)
6. (ever / have / an accident?)

Yes, I have.
Yes, nearly every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2. (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3. (the children / what / are / doing?) What
4. (made / is / how / cheese?)
5. (to the party / coming / is / your sister?)
6. (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)
7. (your guests / have / yet / arrived?)
8. (leave / what time / your train / does?)
9. (to work / Emily / why / go / didn't?)
10. (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)

44.4 Complete the questions.

1. I want to go out. Where do you want to go?
2. Kate and Paul aren't going to the party. Why aren't they going?
3. I'm reading. What?
4. Sue went to bed early. What time?
5. My parents are going on holiday. When?
6. I saw Tom a few days ago. Where?
7. I can't come to the party. Why?
8. Tina has gone away. Why?
9. I need some money. How much?
10. Angela doesn't like me. Why?
11. It rains sometimes. How often?
12. I did the shopping. When?
Who saw you?  Who did you see?
(questions 2)

Silvia saw Paul.
Who saw Paul?
Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)
Who did Silvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Subject: Silvia  saw  Paul

Object: Silvia saw somebody.

Who is the Subject
Paul is the Object

In these questions, who/what is the subject:
- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
  (not Who does live?)
- What happened? (= something happened – what?)
  (not What did happen?)
- What’s happening? (What’s = What is)
- Who’s got my key? (Who’s = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:
- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Silvia wearing?

Compare:
  What does George like? – Oranges.

Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas etc. (something):
- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?
Exercises

45.1 Make questions with who or what. In these questions, who/what is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
2. Something fell off the shelf.
3. Somebody wants to see you.
4. Somebody took my umbrella.
5. Something made me ill.
6. Somebody is coming.

Who broke the window?

45.2 Make questions with who or what (subject or object).

1. I bought something.
2. Somebody lives in this house.
3. I phoned somebody.
4. Something happened last night.
5. Somebody knows the answer.
6. Somebody did the washing-up.
7. Jane did something.
8. Something woke me up.
9. Somebody saw the accident.
10. I saw somebody.
11. Somebody has got my pen.
12. This word means something.

What did you buy?

Who lives in this house?

45.3 You want the missing information (XXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. I lost XXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXX found it and gave it back to me.
2. XXXX phoned me last night. She wanted XXXX.
3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXX. He said XXXX.
4. I hear that XXXX got married last week. XXXX told me.
5. I met XXXX on my way home this evening. She told me XXXX.
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXX won. After the game we XXXX.
7. It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. XXXX gave me a book and Catherine gave me XXXX.
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning Who ...? / What ...? / Where ...? / Which ...?, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:

- 'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'Jack was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who with?' / 'Who is she going with?'
- 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. What do you want to talk about?'

What's it like? / What are they like? etc.

What's it like? = What is it like?
What's it like? = tell me something about it — is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say 'What is it like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like ('Do you like your new house?' etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
  B: What's it like? Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.

- A: What's your new teacher like?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.

- A: I met Nicole's parents yesterday.
  B: Did you? What are they like?
  A: They're very nice.

- A: Did you have a good holiday? What was the weather like?
  B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.
Exercises

46.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. The letter is from XXXXX. Who is the letter from?
2. I’m looking for a XXXXX. What _______ you ________
3. I went to the cinema with XXXXX. ____________
4. The film was about XXXXX. ______________
5. I gave the money to XXXXX. ______________
6. The book was written by XXXXX. ______________

46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

- go
- listen
- look
- talk
- talk
- wait

1. Who is she talking to? 4. What
2. What __________________________ 5. What
3. Which restaurant ________________ 6. Which bus

46.3 Write questions beginning Which ... ?

1. Tom’s father is in hospital. Which hospital is he in?
2. We stayed at a hotel. ________ you ________
3. Jack plays for a football team. ________
4. I went to school in this town. ________

46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with What is/are ... like?

1. (the roads) What are the roads like?
2. (the food) __________________________
3. (the people) __________________________
4. (the weather) __________________________

46.5 Ask questions with What was/were ... like?

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather. What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
3. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
4. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
What ... ?  Which ... ?  How ... ?  (questions 4)

A  What + noun (What colour ... ? / What kind ... ? etc.)
- What colour is your car?
- What size is this shirt?
- What time is it?
- What kind of job do you want?  (or What type of job ... ? / What sort of job ... ?)

What without a noun:
- What's your favourite colour?
- What do you want to do tonight?

B  Which + noun (things or people):
- Which train did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- Which doctor did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use which without a noun for things, not people:
- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use who for people (without a noun):
- Who is taller – Joe or Gary?  (not Which is taller?)

C  What or which?

We use which when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):
- We can go this way or that way.
- Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.
- Which is yours?  WHICH?

What is more general:
- What's the capital of Argentina?  (of all the cities in Argentina)
- What sort of music do you like?  (of all kinds of music)

Compare:
- What colour are his eyes?  (not Which colour?)
  - Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world?
  - Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

D  How ... ?

- 'How was the party last night?'  ‘It was great.’
- 'How do you usually go to work?'  ‘By bus.’

You can use how + adjective/adverb (how tall / how old / how often etc.):
- 'How far is it from here to the airport?'  ‘Five kilometres.’
- 'How often do you use your car?'  ‘Every day.’
- 'How long have they been married?'  ‘Ten years.’
- 'How much was the meal?'  ‘Thirty pounds.’
47.1 Write questions with what.

1. I've got a new TV set. (make?) What make is it?
2. I want a job. (kind?) What kind of job do you want?
3. I've got a new sweater. (colour?) What colour is it?
4. I got up early this morning. (time?) When did you get up?
5. I like music. (type?) What kind of music do you like?
6. I want to buy a car. (kind?) What kind of car do you want?

47.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ... ?

1. Which way shall we go?
2. Which one is yours?
3. Which film do you want to see?
4. Which bus goes to the centre?

47.3 Write what/which/who.

1. What is that man's name?
2. Which way shall we go? Left or right?
3. You can have tea or coffee. Do you prefer?
4. Which day is it today? 'Friday.'
5. This is a nice office. Is this desk yours?
6. Which is your favourite sport?
7. Which is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. Which is older, Liz or Steve?
9. Which kind of camera do you have?
10. A: I've got three cameras.
11. B: Which camera do you use most?
12. Which nationality are you?

47.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.).

2. How far is it to the station? It's about two kilometres from here.
3. How old is Helen? She's 26.
4. How often do the buses run? Every ten minutes.
5. How deep is the water in the pool? Two metres.
6. How long have you lived here? Nearly three years.

47.5 Write questions with How ... ?

1. Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80? How tall are you?
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? How heavy is it?
3. Are you 20 years old? 22? 25? How old are you?
4. Did you spend £20? £30? £50? How much did you spend?
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? How often do you watch TV?
6. Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000? How far is it?
How long does it take ... ?

How long does it take from ... to ... ?

How long does it take by plane from New York to Washington?
It takes an hour.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

How long does it take to do something?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long</th>
<th>does</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>will</th>
<th>it take to ... ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>takes</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>three hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn’t</td>
<td>didn’t</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>long</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn’t</td>
<td>won’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- ‘I came by train.’ ‘Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?’
- How long will it take to get from here to the hotel?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn’t take long to cook an omelette.
- It won’t take long to fix the computer.

How long does it take you to do something?

I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday evening.
It took me three days to read it.

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It takes Tom 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took us an hour to do the shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take me an hour to cook dinner.
48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with How long ... ?

1. How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?

48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to London
   It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.

2. fly from your city/country to New York

3. study to be a doctor in your country

4. walk from your home to the nearest shop

5. get from your home to the nearest airport

48.3 Write questions with How long did it take ... ?

1. (Jane found a job.) How long did it take her to find a job?

2. (I walked to the station.) How long did it take you?

3. (Tom painted the bathroom.) How long did it take him?

4. (I learnt to ski.) How long did it take you?

5. (They repaired the computer.) How long did it take them?

48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It took ... .

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
   It took me three days to read the book.

2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o’clock and we arrived home at 10.20.

3. I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.


5. Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.

6. Write a sentence about yourself.
Unit 49

Do you know where ...? I don't know what ... etc.

We say: Where is Paula?

but Do you know where Paula is? (not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:
I know
I don't know where Paula is.
Can you tell me

Compare:
Who are those people? but who those people are
How old is Nicole? how old Nicole is
What time is it? what time it is
Where can I go? where I can go
How much is this camera? how much this camera is
When are you going away? when you're going away
Where have they gone? where they have gone
What was Kate wearing? what Kate was wearing

Questions with do/does/did (present simple and past simple)

Do you know Can you tell me

I know I don't know
I don't remember

Questions beginning Is ...? / Do ...? / Can ...? etc. (yes/no questions)

Is Jack at home? but Do you know Jack is at home
Have they got a car? if they've got a car
Can Brian swim? whether Brian can swim
Do they live near here? they live near here
Did anybody see you? anybody saw you

You can use if or whether in these sentences:
- Do you know if they've got a car? or Do you know whether they've got a car?
- I don't know if anybody saw me. or I don't know whether anybody saw me.
49.1 Answer these questions with I don’t know where/when/why ... etc.

1 Have your friends gone home? (where) I don’t know where they’ve gone.
2 Is Kate in her office? (where) I don’t know.
3 Is the castle very old? (how old) ________________________________
4 Will Paul be here soon? (when) ________________________________
5 Was he angry because I was late? (why) ________________________________
6 Has Sally lived here a long time? (how long) ________________________________

49.2 Complete the sentences.

1 (How do aeroplanes fly?) Do you know how aeroplanes fly? ________________________________?
2 (Where does Susan work?) I don’t know ________________________________.
3 (What did Peter say?) Do you remember ________________________________?
4 (Why did he go home early?) I don’t know ________________________________.
5 (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know ________________________________?
6 (How did the accident happen?) I don’t remember ________________________________.

49.3 Which is right?

1 Do you know what time is it / it is? (Do you know what time it is? is right)
2 Why are you / you are going away?
3 I don’t know where are they / they are going.
4 Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5 Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
6 Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
7 I don’t know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

49.4 Write questions with Do you know if ...?

1 (Have they got a car?) Do you know if they’ve got a car? ________________________________
2 (Are they married?) Do you know ________________________________.
3 (Does Sue know Bill?) ________________________________
4 (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) ________________________________
5 (Did he pass his exam?) ________________________________

49.5 Write questions beginning Do you know ...?

1 (What does Laura want?) Do you know what Laura wants? ________________________________
2 (Where is Paula?) ________________________________
3 (Is she working today?) ________________________________
4 (What time does she start work?) ________________________________
5 (Are the shops open tomorrow?) ________________________________
6 (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) ________________________________
7 (Did they go to Jane’s party?) ________________________________

49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 Do you know why the bus was late? ________________________________?
2 Do you know what time ________________________________?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where ________________________________?
4 I don’t know what ________________________________?
5 Do you know if ________________________________?
6 Do you know how much ________________________________?
Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

**DIANE**

- I'm enjoying my new job.
- My father isn't well.

**SARAH**

- We're going to buy a house.

**TIM**

**PETER**

- I have to leave early.
- My sister has gone to Australia.

**KATE**

- I can't find a job.

**STEVE**

- I'll phone you.

**RACHEL**

- I don't like my job.
- My son doesn't like school.

**MIKE**

- You look tired.
- I feel fine.

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

- Diane said that she was enjoying her new job.
- She said that her father wasn't well.

- Sarah and Tim said that they were going to buy a house.

- Peter said that he had to leave early.
- He said that his sister had gone to Australia.

- Kate said that she couldn't find a job.

- Steve said that he would phone me.

- Rachel said that she didn't like her job.
- She said that her son didn't like school.

- Mike said that I looked tired.
- I said that I felt fine.

### Say and Tell

**Say (→ said)**

- He said that he was tired. (not He said me)
- What did she say to you? (not say you)

We say he said to me, I said to Ann etc. but not 'he said me', 'I said Ann'.

**Tell (→ told)**

- He told me that he was tired. (not He told that)
- What did she tell you? (not tell to you)

We say he told me, I told Ann etc. but not 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann'.

You can say:

- He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired. (without that)
- Kate told me that she couldn't find a job. or Kate told me she couldn't find a job.
50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that) ... .

1. I've lost my watch.
   He said he had lost his watch.

2. I'm very busy.

3. I can't go to the party.

4. I have to go out.

5. I'm learning Russian.

6. I don't feel very well.

7. We'll be home late.

8. I've just come back from holiday.

9. I'm going to buy a new computer.

10. We haven't got a key.

50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1. I'm enjoying my new job.
   DIANE

2. I'm not hungry.
   EMMA

3. I need it.
   MIKE

4. I don't want to go.
   HANNAH

5. You can have it.
   SUSAN

6. I'll send you a postcard.
   MARTIN

   NICOLE

8. I want to watch TV.
   DAVID

9. I'm going to the cinema.
   MARY

1. I met Diane last week. She said "she was enjoying her new job".

2. Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said "I'm not hungry".

3. I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said "I need it".

4. Hannah was invited to the party, but she said "I don't want to go".

5. Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said "You can have it".

6. Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said "I'll send you a postcard".

7. I was looking for Robert. Nicole said "Where's Robert? He's gone home".

8. 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said "I need it"'.

9. 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said "I'm going to the cinema"'.

50.3 Write say/said or tell/told.

1. He said he was tired.

2. What did she tell you?

3. Anna told she didn't like Peter.

4. Jack told me that you were ill.

5. Please don't tell Dan what happened.

6. Did Lucy tell she would be late?

7. The woman said she was a reporter.

8. The woman told us she was a reporter.

9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't tell them anything.

10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't tell anything.
work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

We use the infinitive with will/can/must etc.:

- will
  - Anna will be here soon. → Units 27–28
  - Shall I open the window? → Unit 29
- shall
  - I might open the window later.
- might
  - I might phone you later.
- may
  - May I sit here?
- can
  - I can't meet you tomorrow.
- could
  - Could you pass the salt, please?
- must
  - It's late. I must go now. → Unit 31
- should
  - You shouldn't work so hard. → Unit 32
- would
  - Would you like some coffee? → Unit 34

We use the infinitive with do/does/did:

- do/does (present simple)
  - Do you work? → Units 6–7
  - They don't work very hard.
  - Helen doesn't know many people.
  - How much does it cost?
- did (past simple)
  - What time did the train leave? → Unit 12
  - We didn't sleep well.

A to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

(I'm) going to ...
- I'm going to play tennis tomorrow. → Unit 26
- What are you going to do?

(l) have to ...
- I have to go now. → Unit 33
- Everybody has to eat.

(l) want to ...
- Do you want to go out? → Unit 52
- They don't want to come with us.

(l) would like to ...
- I'd like to talk to you. → Unit 34
- Would you like to go out?

(l) used to ...
- Dave used to work in a factory. → Unit 36

B working/go/playing etc.

am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)
- Please be quiet. I'm working. → Units 3–4, 8, 25
- Tom isn't working today.
- What time are you going out?

was/were + -ing (past continuous)
- It was raining, so we didn't go out. → Units 13–14
- What were you doing when the phone rang?
51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... phone Paul or ... to phone Paul.

1. I’ll _____________________________.
2. I’m going _________________________.
3. Can you __________________________ Paul?
4. Shall I ___________________________?
5. I’d like ___________________________.
6. Do you have _________________________?
7. You should _________________________.
8. I want _____________________________.
9. I might _____________________________.
10. You must ___________________________.

51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do/doing</th>
<th>get/getting</th>
<th>sleep/sleeping</th>
<th>watch/watching</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat/eating</td>
<td>go/going</td>
<td>stay/staying</td>
<td>wear/wearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly/flying</td>
<td>listen/listening</td>
<td>wait/waiting</td>
<td>work/working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Please be quiet. I’m ___________________________.
2. I feel tired today. I didn’t _______________________ very well last night.
3. What time do you usually _______________________ up in the morning?
4. ‘Where are you ______________________?’ ‘To the bank.’
5. Did you _______________________ television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It’s _______________________ very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I’m not _______________________ to it.
8. They didn’t _______________________ anything because they weren’t hungry.
9. My friends were _______________________ for me when I arrived.
10. ‘Does Susan always _______________________ glasses?’ ‘No, only for reading.’
11. ‘What are you _______________________ tonight?’ ‘I’m _______________________ at home.’

51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the infinitive (work/go etc.) or
to ... (to work / to go etc.) or
-ing (working/going etc.)

1. Shall I _______________________ the window? (open)
2. It’s late. I have _______________________ now. (go)
3. Amanda isn’t _______________________ this week. She’s on holiday. (work)
4. I’m tired. I don’t want _______________________ out. (go)
5. It might _______________________, so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have _______________________ tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I’m sorry I can’t _______________________ you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He’s _______________________ physics. (study)
9. Would you like _______________________ on a trip round the world? (go)
10. When you saw Maria, what was she _______________________? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going _______________________? (stay)
12. I’m hungry. I must _______________________ something to eat. (have)
13. ‘Where’s Gary?’ ‘He’s _______________________ a bath.’ (have)
14. I used _______________________ a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15. He spoke very quietly. I couldn’t _______________________ him. (hear)
16. You don’t look well. I don’t think you should _______________________ to work today. (go)
17. I don’t know what he said. I wasn’t _______________________ to him. (listen)
18. I’m sorry I’m late. I had _______________________ a phone call. (make)
19. I want _______________________ what happened. (know) You must _______________________ me. (tell)
20. May I _______________________ your phone? (use)
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

- want
- plan
- decide
- try
- hope
- expect
- offer
- forget
- need
- promise
- refuse
- learn
- + to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- What do you want to do this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't need to go home yet.
- Tina has decided to sell her car.
- You forgot to switch off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to read my book, but I was too tired.

verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

- enjoy
- stop
- suggest
- + -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- I enjoy dancing. (not enjoy to dance)
- I don’t mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the cinema.

verbs + -ing or to ...

- like
- love
- start
- prefer
- hate
- continue
- + -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Anna loves dancing. or Anna loves to dance.
- I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- It started raining. or It started to rain.

would like to ... etc.

- would like
- would love
- would prefer
- would hate
- + to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- Julia would like to meet you.
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' ‘No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you.'
- I like this city very much. I wouldn’t like to move.
- I’d hate to lose my address book.
52.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.
1 I enjoy ____________. (dance) 8 The weather was nice, so I suggested ____________ for a walk by the river. (go)
2 What do you want ____________ tonight? (do) 9 Where's Bill? He promised ____________ here on time. (be)
3 Bye! I hope ____________ you again soon. (see) 10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind ____________. (wait)
4 I learnt ____________ when I was five years old. (swim) 11 What have you decided ____________? (do)
5 Have you finished ____________ the kitchen? (clean) 12 Gary was very angry and refused ____________ to me. (speak)
6 Where's Anna? I need ____________ her something. (ask) 13 I'm tired. I want ____________ to bed. (go)
7 Do you enjoy ____________ other countries? (visit) 14 I was very upset and started ____________. (cry)
15 I'm trying ____________. (work) Please stop ____________. (talk)

52.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use these verbs:
go help lose rain read see send wait watch
1 'Have you ever been to Australia?' 'No, but I'd love ____________ to go.'
2 Jane had a lot to do, so I offered ____________ her.
3 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect ____________ you.
4 Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys ____________ .
5 This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate ____________ it.
6 Don't forget ____________ us a postcard when you're on holiday.
7 I'm not going out until it stops ____________ .
8 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like ____________ to the beach?
9 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like ____________ television.
10 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer ____________ a few minutes.'

52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you usually get up early?</td>
<td>Yes, I like ____________ to get up early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you ever go to museums?</td>
<td>Yes, I enjoy ____________ to a museum now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you like to go to a museum now?</td>
<td>No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer ____________ to a restaurant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you often write letters?</td>
<td>No, I don't like ____________ .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you ever been to New York?</td>
<td>No, but I'd love ____________ one day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you often travel by train?</td>
<td>Yes, I enjoy ____________ .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shall we walk home or take a taxi?</td>
<td>I don't mind ____________, but a taxi would be quicker.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.
1 I enjoy ____________ .
2 I don't like ____________ .
3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like ____________ .
4 When I'm on holiday, I like ____________ .
5 I don't mind ____________, but ____________ .
6 I wouldn't like ____________ .
I want you to ...

The woman wants to go.
The man doesn't want the woman to go.
He wants her to stay.

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>to do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I want you to be happy. (not I want that you are happy)
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:
- Would you like me to lend you some money?

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

- **ask**: Sue asked a friend to lend her some money.
- **tell**: I told you to be careful.
- **advise**: What do you advise me to do?
- **expect**: I didn't expect them to be here.
- **persuade**: We persuaded Gary to come with us.
- **teach**: I am teaching my brother to swim.

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...

- Jane told me to wait for her.
- Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

Make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:
- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. (not makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn't working. (not let me to use)

You can say Let's ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:
- Come on! Let's dance.
- 'Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

Let's ... → Unit 35 He told me that ... → Unit 50
53.1 Write sentences beginning I want you ... / I don’t want you ... / Do you want me ... ?

1 (you must come with me)  I want you to come with me.
2 (listen carefully)  I want ...
3 (please don’t be angry)  I don’t ...
4 (shall I wait for you?)  Do you ...
5 (don’t phone me tonight)  ...
6 (you must meet Sarah)  

53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 Come on! Let’s go to the cinema! It’s a good film.
   2 Where’s the station? Turn left after the bridge.
   3 I’m not well. You should go to the doctor.
   4 Can you help me?
   5 I’m busy now. Come back in ten minutes.
   6 Can I use your phone?
   7 Don’t phone before 8 o’clock.
   8 Do you play the piano?

1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told...
3 Brian wasn’t well. I advised...
4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked...
5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told...
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let...
7 Sue is going to phone later. I told...
8 Ann’s mother taught...

53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait etc.); sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait etc.).

arrive borrow get go go make repeat tell think wait

1 Please stay here. I don’t want you to go yet.
2 I didn’t hear what she said, so I asked her to...
3 ‘Shall we begin?’ ‘No, let’s to a few minutes.’
4 Are they already here? I expected them much later.
5 Kevin’s parents didn’t want him to married.
6 I want to stay here. You can’t make me to with you.
7 ‘Is that your bicycle?’ ‘No, it’s John’s. He to it.’
8 Rachel can’t come to the party. She to you.
9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me some coffee?
10 ‘Kate doesn’t like me.’ ‘What makes you to that?’
Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop? **To get** a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to get** a newspaper.

**to ... (to get / to see etc.)** tells us *why* a person does something:

- 'Why are you going out?' 'To get some bread.'
- Catherine went to the station **to meet** her friend.
- Sue turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain **to learn** Spanish.

**money/time to (do something):**

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I haven't got **time to watch** television.

**to ... and for ...**

**to + verb**

(to get / to see etc.)

- I went to the shop **to get** a newspaper. **(not for get)**
- They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.
- We need some money **to buy** food.

**for + noun**

(for a newspaper / for food etc.)

- I went to the shop **for a newspaper**.
- They're going to Brazil **for a holiday**.
- We need some money **for food**.

**wait for ... :**

- Please **wait for** me.
- Are you **waiting for** the bus?

**wait to (do something):**

- Hurry up! I'm **waiting to go**.
- Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

**wait for (somebody/something) to ... :**

- I can't go out yet. I'm **waiting for John to phone**.
- Are you **waiting for the doctor to come**?
54.1 Write sentences beginning I went to ... . Choose from the boxes.

the café  the post office + buy some food  get some stamps
the chemist  the supermarket  get some medicine  meet a friend

1. I went to the post office to get some stamps.
2. I went .................................................................
3. .................................................................
4. .................................................................

54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

to get some fresh air  to read the newspaper  to wake him up
to open the door  to see who it was  to watch the news

1. I turned on the television ........................................
2. Alice sat down in an armchair ................................
3. Do I need a key ......................................................?
4. I went for a walk by the river ...................................
5. I knocked on the door of David's room ......................
6. The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window ........

54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use to ...

1. I went to the shop .............................................
2. I'm very busy. I haven't got time ..........................
3. I phoned Ann ......................................................
4. I'm going out ......................................................
5. I borrowed some money ......................................

54.4 Write to or for.

1. I went out _____ get some bread.
2. We went to a restaurant _____ have dinner.
3. Robert wants to go to university _____ study economics.
4. I'm going to London _____ an interview next week.
5. I'm going to London _____ visit some friends of mine.
6. Have you got time _____ a cup of coffee?
7. I got up late this morning. I didn't have time _____ wash.
8. Everybody needs money _____ live.
9. We didn't have any money _____ a taxi, so we walked home.
10. The office is very small. There's space only _____ a desk and chair.
11. A: Excuse me, are you waiting _____ use the phone?
    B: No, I'm waiting _____ somebody.

54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

John - phone  it / to arrive  you / tell me  the film / begin

1. I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
2. I sat down in the cinema and waited ..................................
3. We called an ambulance and waited ..................................
4. ‘Do you know what to do?’ ‘No, I'm waiting ..........................’
go to ...  go on ...  go for ...  go -ing

go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)

- What time do you usually go to work?
- I'm going to China next week.
- Sophie didn't want to go to the concert.
- 'Where's Tom?' 'He's gone to bed.'
- I went to the dentist yesterday.

go to sleep = start to sleep:
- I was very tired and went to sleep quickly.

go home (without to)
- I'm going home now. (not going to home)

go on ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go on</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>We're going on holiday next week.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a trip</td>
<td>Children often go on school trips.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a tour</td>
<td>When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an excursion</td>
<td>Workers at the airport have gone on strike. (= they are refusing to work)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a cruise</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strike</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

go for ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go (somewhere) for</th>
<th>a walk</th>
<th>'Where's Emma?' 'She's gone for a walk.'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a run</td>
<td>Do you go for a run every morning?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a swim</td>
<td>The water looks nice. I'm going for a swim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a drink</td>
<td>I met Chris in town, so we went for a coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a meal</td>
<td>Shall we go out for a meal? I know a good restaurant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

go + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (swimming / skiing etc.) and also shopping.

- I go shopping
- I'm going swimming
- I'm going fishing
- She's going sailing
- They have gone skiing
- She wants to go jogging etc.

- Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's go swimming.
  (or Let's go for a swim.)
- Richard has a small boat and he often goes sailing.
- I went jogging before breakfast this morning.
Exercises

55.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.

1. I'm going _______ China next week.
2. Richard often goes _______ sailing. (no preposition)
3. Sue went _______ Mexico last year.
4. Would you like to go _______ the cinema this evening?
5. Jack goes _______ jogging every morning.
6. I'm going out _______ a walk. Do you want to come?
7. I'm tired because I went _______ bed very late last night.
8. Martin is going _______ holiday _______ Italy next week.
9. The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went _______ a swim.
10. The taxi drivers went _______ strike when I was in New York.
11. I need some stamps, so I'm going _______ the post office.
12. It's late. I have to go _______ home now.
13. Would you like to go _______ a tour of the city?
14. Shall we go out _______ dinner this evening?
15. My parents are going _______ a cruise this summer.

55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.

1. Richard has a boat. He often _______ sailing _______.
2. Last Saturday Diane went ___________________________.
3. Gary ___________________________ every day.
4. Nicole is going on holiday next month. She is ___________________________.
5. Peter is going out later. He has to ___________________________.
6. Sarah ___________________________ after work yesterday.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a swim</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>Portugal</th>
<th>shopping</th>
<th>sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a walk</td>
<td>home</td>
<td>riding</td>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>university</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The water looks nice. Let's go _______ a swim _______.
2. After leaving school, Tina went ___________________________ where she studied psychology.
3. I'm going ___________________________ now. I have to buy a few things.
4. I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went ___________________________.
5. I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went ___________________________ early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go ___________________________ most weekends.
7. Richard has got a horse. He goes ___________________________ a lot.
8. The weather is nice. Shall we go ___________________________ along the river?
9. A: Are you going ___________________________ soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We're going ___________________________. We've never been there before.
Unit 56

get

get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/find:

you don't have something

you get it

you have it

□ 'Did you get my postcard?' 'Yes, I got it yesterday.' (= receive)
□ I like your sweater. Where did you get it? (= buy)
□ Is it difficult to get a job at the moment? (= find)
□ (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Lisa, please?' 'Sure. I'll get her.'

also get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.):
□ 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I got the bus.'

get hungry / get cold / get tired etc. (get + adjective) = become:

you're not hungry

you get hungry

you are hungry

□ If you don't eat, you get hungry.
□ Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
□ I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon.
□ It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got very wet.

also get married

got dressed (= put your clothes on)

got lost (= lose your way)

□ Nicole and Frank are getting married soon.
□ I got up and got dressed quickly.
□ We didn't have a map, so we got lost.

get to a place = arrive:

□ I usually get to work before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
□ We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45.

get here/there (without to):

□ How did you get here? By bus?

get home (without to):

□ What time did you get home last night?

get in/out/on/off

□ Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car and ...)
□ A car stopped and a man got out. (but A man got out of the car.)
□ We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.
56.1 Complete these sentences. Use get/gets and choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a doctor</th>
<th>a lot of rain</th>
<th>a taxi</th>
<th>my postcard</th>
<th>the job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a good salary</td>
<td>a new computer</td>
<td>a ticket</td>
<td>some milk</td>
<td>your jacket</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Did you __________ my postcard? I sent it a week ago.
2. Where did you ______________? It's very nice.
3. Quick! This man is ill. We must ______________________.
4. I don't want to walk home. Let's ______________________.
5. Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he ______________________.
6. When you go out, can you ______________________?
7. 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can ______________________.'
8. Margaret has got a well-paid job. She ______________________.
9. The weather is horrible here in winter. We ______________________.
10. I'm going to ______________________. The one I have is too slow.

56.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + these words:

cold  dark  late  married  ready

1. Drink your coffee. It's __________ cold.
2. Turn on the light. It's ______________________.
3. 'I'm ______________________ next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!'
4. 'Where's Karen?' 'She's ______________________ to go out.'
5. It's ______________________. It's time to go home.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/gets/got + these words:

angry  better  hungrier  lost  married  old  wet

1. If you don't eat, you __________ hungry.
2. Don't go out in the rain. You'll ______________________.
3. My brother ______________________ last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4. Martin is always very calm. He never ______________________.
5. We tried to find the hotel, but we ______________________.
6. Everybody wants to stay young, but we all ______________________.
7. Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it ______________________ during the day.

56.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to ... .

1. home / 7.30 → work / 8.15
   I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.

2. London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45
   I left London at 10.15 and ______________________.

3. the party / 11.15 → home / midnight
   ______________________

4. Write a sentence about yourself.
   I left ______________________.

56.5 Write got in / got out of / got on / got off.

1. Kate __________ the car and drove away.
2. I ______________________ the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3. Isabel ______________________ the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4. I made a stupid mistake. I ______________________ the wrong train.
do and make

**Do** is a general word for actions:
- What are you **doing** this evening? *(not What are you making?)*
- Shall I open the window? ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll do it.’
- Rachel’s job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

**What do you do?** = **What’s your job?**:
- ‘What do you **do**?’ ‘I work in a bank.’

**Make** = produce/create. For example:

She’s making coffee. He has **made** a cake. They **make** umbrellas. It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:
- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
  B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

 Expressions with **do**

- an exam / a test
- a course
- homework
- housework
- somebody a favour
- an exercise

- I’m **doing** my driving test next week.
- John has just **done** a training course.
- Our children have to **do** a lot of homework.
- I hate **doing** housework, especially cleaning.
- Sue, could you **do** me a favour?
- I go for a run and **do** exercises every morning.

*also* **do the shopping** / **do the washing** / **do the washing-up** / **do the ironing** / **do the cooking** etc.:
- I **did** the washing, but I didn’t **do** the shopping.

 Expressions with **make**

- a mistake
- an appointment
- a phone call
- a list
- a noise
- a bed

- I’m sorry, I **made** a mistake.
- I need to **make** an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make** a phone call.
- Have you **made** a shopping list?
- It’s late. Don’t **make** a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to **make** my bed in the morning.

We say **make** a film **but** take a photograph:
- When was this film **made**? **but** When was this photograph **taken**?
Exercises

**Unit 57**

**57.1 Write make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.**

1. ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll ___ it.’
2. What did you __________ at the weekend? Did you go away?
3. Do you know how to ___________ bread?
4. Paper is _________ from wood.
5. Richard didn’t help me. He sat in an armchair and ___________ nothing.
6. ‘What do you ___________?’ ‘I’m a doctor.’
7. I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you ___________ it?
8. ‘What do they ___________ in that factory?’ ‘Shoes.’
9. I’m ___________ some coffee. Would you like some?
10. Why are you angry with me? I didn’t ___________ anything wrong.
11. ‘What are you ___________ tomorrow afternoon?’ ‘I’m working.’

**57.2 What are these people doing?**

1. He’s making a cake.
2. They ___________
3. He ___________
4. ___________
5. ___________
6. ___________
7. ___________
8. ___________
9. ___________
10. ___________

**57.3 Write make or do in the correct form.**

1. I hate ___________ in housework, especially cleaning.
2. Why do you always ___________ the same mistake?
3. ‘Can you ___________ me a favour?’ ‘It depends what it is.’
4. ‘Have you ___________ your homework?’ ‘Not yet.’
5. I need to see the dentist, but I haven’t ___________ an appointment.
6. I’m ___________ a course in photography at the moment. It’s very good.
7. The last time I ___________ an exam was ten years ago.
8. How many phone calls did you ___________ yesterday?
9. When you’ve finished Exercise 1, you can ___________ Exercise 2.
10. There’s something wrong with the car. The engine is ___________ a strange noise.
11. It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I’ve ever ___________.
12. Let’s ___________ a list of all the things we have to ___________ today.
have

have and have got

I've got (something) or I have (something) = it is mine:
- I've got a new car. or I have a new car.
- Sue has got long hair. or Sue has long hair.
- Have they got any children? or Do they have any children?
- Tim hasn't got a job. or Tim doesn't have a job.
- How much time have you got? or How much time do you have?

also

I've got
- a headache / (a) toothache / a pain in my leg etc.
- I have
- a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

- I've got a headache. or I have a headache.
- Have you got a cold? or Do you have a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:
- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- Did you have enough time to do everything you wanted?

have breakfast / have a shower etc.

In these expressions have = eat/drink/take etc. You can't use 'have got'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>breakfast / lunch / dinner</th>
<th>'Where's Liz?' 'She's having lunch.'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc.</td>
<td>I don't usually have breakfast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc.</td>
<td>I had three cups of coffee this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>something to eat/drink</td>
<td>'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>a bath / a shower</th>
<th>I had a shower this morning.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a rest / a holiday / a party</td>
<td>We're having a party next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a nice time / a good trip / fun etc.</td>
<td>You must come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)</td>
<td>Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a dream / an accident</td>
<td>Did you have a good time in Tokyo?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a baby</td>
<td>Sandra has just had a baby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a look (at something)</td>
<td>Can I have a look at your newspaper?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:

Have got or have
- I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good.

Have (not have got)
- I have a shower every morning.
  (not I've got a shower every morning)
- A: Where's Paul?
  B: He's having a shower.
  (= he's washing now)
58.1 Write the correct form of have or have got.

1. I didn’t have _____ time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2. Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have) _____ a car? ‘No, she can’t drive.’ (Lisa / have?)
3. He can’t open the door. ___________ a key. (he / not / have)
4. ___________ a cold last week. He’s better now. (Gary / have)
5. What’s wrong? ___________ a headache? (you / have?)
6. We wanted to go by taxi, but ___________ enough money. (we / not / have)
7. Liz is very busy. ___________ much free time. (she / not / have)
8. ___________ any problems when you were on holiday? (you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

1. They’re having breakfast.
2. She ___________ a cup of tea
3. He ___________ a rest

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use have.

1. Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes? Have a nice holiday!
2. You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight. Did you have a good flight?
3. Tim is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
4. It’s Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
5. Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
6. Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?
7. Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

an accident a glass of water a look a walk a party something to eat

1. We ___________ a party a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2. ‘Shall we ___________? ’ ‘No, I’m not hungry.’
3. I was thirsty, so I ___________.
4. I like to get up early and ___________ before breakfast.
5. Tina is a very good driver. She has never ___________.
6. There’s something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you ___________ at it?
A  People

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I know Tom.
We know Tom.
You know Tom.
He knows Tom.
She knows Tom.
They know Tom.

Tom knows me.
Tom knows us.
Tom knows you.
Tom knows him.
Tom knows her.
Tom knows them.

B  Things

It's nice. I like it.

They're nice. I like them.

- I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.

C  We use me/her/them etc. (object) after a preposition (for/to/with etc.):

- This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
- Where's the newspaper? 'You're sitting on it.'

Give it/them to...:

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give them to him, please?

my/his/their etc. → Unit 60  Give me that book / Give it to me → Unit 96
59.1 Complete the sentences with him/her/them.
1. I don’t know those girls. Do you know them?
2. I don’t know that man. Do you know him?
3. I don’t know those people. Do you know them?
4. I don’t know David’s wife. Do you know her?
5. I don’t know Mr Stevens. Do you know him?
6. I don’t know Sarah’s parents. Do you know them?
7. I don’t know the woman in the black coat. Do you know her?

59.2 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/she/her etc.
1. I want to see her, but she doesn’t want to see me.
2. They want to see me, but I don’t want to see them.
3. She wants to see him, but he doesn’t want to see her.
4. We want to see them, but they don’t want to see us.
5. He wants to see us, but we don’t want to see him.
6. They want to see her, but she doesn’t want to see them.
7. I want to see them, but they don’t want to see me.
8. You want to see her, but she doesn’t want to see you.

59.3 Write sentences beginning I like ... , I don’t like ... or Do you like ... ?
1. I don’t eat tomatoes. I don’t like them.
2. George is a very nice man. I like him.
3. This jacket isn’t very nice. I don’t like it.
4. This is my new car. Do you like it?
5. Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I don’t like her.
6. These are my new shoes. Do you like them?

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/him etc.
1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
2. ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, I work with him.’
3. Where are the tickets? I can’t find them.
4. I can’t find my keys. Where are they?
5. We’re going out. You can come with us.
6. I’ve got a new computer. Do you want to see it?
7. Maria likes music. He plays the piano.
8. I don’t like dogs. I’m afraid of them.
9. I’m talking to you. Please listen to me.
10. Where is Anna? I want to talk to her.
11. You can have these CDs. I don’t want them.
12. My brother has a new job, but he doesn’t like it very much.

59.5 Complete the sentences.
1. I need that book. Can you give it to me?
2. He wants the key. Can you give it to him?
3. She wants the keys. Can you give them to her?
4. I want that letter. Can you give it to me?
5. They want the money. Can you give it to them?
6. We want the photographs. Can you give them to us?
my/his/their etc.

I → my
we → our
you → your
he → his
she → her
tyey → their

I like my house.
We like our house.
You like your house.
He likes his house.
She likes her house.
They like their house.

it → its
Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use my/your/his etc. + noun:

my hands  his new car  her parents
our clothes your best friend their room

his/her/their

DONNA

her car
(= Donna’s car)
her husband
(= Donna’s husband)
her children
(= Donna’s children)

ANDY

his bicycle
his sister
his parents

MR AND MRS LEE

their son
their daughter
their children

its and it’s
its
Oxford is famous for its university.
it’s (= it is)
I like Oxford. It’s a nice place. (= It is a nice place.)

mine/yours etc. → Unit 61  I/me/my/mine → Unit 62
60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1. I'm going to wash __________ hands. 4. He's going to wash __________.
2. She's going to wash __________ hands. 5. They're going to wash __________.
3. We're going to wash __________. 6. Are you going to wash __________?

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1. He __________ with his parents. 5. I __________ parents.
2. They live with __________ parents. 6. John __________.
3. We __________ parents. 7. Do you live __________?

60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with his/her/their.

1. I saw Sarah with __________ husband, Philip.
2. I saw Laura and Steve with __________ children.
3. I saw Steve with __________ wife, Laura.
4. I saw Gary with __________ brother, Tim.
5. I saw Laura with __________ brother, Tim.
6. I saw Sarah and Philip with __________ son, Tim.
7. I saw Laura with __________ parents.
8. I saw Emma and Robert with __________ parents.

60.4 Write my/our/your/his/her/their/its.
1. Do you like __________ job?
2. I know Mr Watson, but I don't know __________ wife.
3. Alice and Tom live in London. __________ son lives in Australia.
4. We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all __________ friends.
5. Anna is going out with __________ friends this evening.
7. 'Is that __________ car?' 'No, I haven't got a car.'
8. I want to phone Maria. Do you know __________ phone number?
9. Do you think most people are happy in __________ jobs?
10. I'm going to wash __________ hair before I go out.
11. This is a beautiful tree. __________ leaves are a beautiful colour.
12. John has a brother and a sister. __________ brother is 25, and __________ sister is 21.

60.5 Complete the sentences. Use his/his/their etc. with these words:

coat  homework  house  husband  job  key  name
1. Jim doesn't enjoy __________ job. It's not very interesting.
2. I can't get in. I haven't got __________
3. Sally is married. __________ works in a bank.
4. Please take off __________ and sit down.
5. 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing __________.'
6. 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know __________.'
7. We live in Barton Street. __________ is at the end on the left.
Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

| I → my → mine | It's my money. | It's mine. |
| we → our → ours | It's our money. | It's ours. |
| you → your → yours | It's your money. | It's yours. |
| he → his → his | It's his money. | It's his. |
| she → her → hers | It's her money. | It's hers. |
| they → their → theirs | It's their money. | It's theirs. |

We use *my*/your etc.+ noun (my hands / your book etc.):
- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Helen gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use *mine*/yours etc. without a noun:
- Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not ours. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in theirs. (= their car)

You can use his with or without a noun:
- 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'

A friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.
- I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend of his. (not a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of yours? (not friends of you)

Whose ... ?

You can use whose with or without a noun:
- Whose money is this? It's mine.
- Whose is this?
- Whose shoes are these? They're John's.
Exercises

Unit 61

61.1 Complete the sentences with mine/yours etc.

1 It's your money. It's___________________. 5 It's their house. It's___________________.
2 It's my bag. It's_______________________. 6 They're your books. They're___________________.
3 It's our car. It's_________________________. 7 They're my glasses. They're___________________.
4 They're her shoes. They're___________________. 8 It's his coat. It's_________________________.

61.2 Choose the right word.

1 It's __________ problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7 They've got two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

61.3 Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.

1 I went to the cinema with a ___________________________.
2 They went on holiday with some ___________________________.
3 She's going out with a friend
4 We had dinner with some ___________________________________.
5 I played tennis with a ___________________________________.
6 Tom is going to meet a ___________________________________.
7 Do you know those people? Are they ___________________________?

61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

1 ___________________________. 2 ___________________________.
3 ___________________________. 4 ___________________________.
5 ___________________________. 6 ___________________________.
I/me/my/mine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I etc. (→ Unit 59)</th>
<th>me etc. (→ Unit 59)</th>
<th>my etc. (→ Unit 60)</th>
<th>mine etc. (→ Unit 61)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows me.</td>
<td>It's my car.</td>
<td>It's mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows us.</td>
<td>It's our car.</td>
<td>It's ours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows you.</td>
<td>It's your car.</td>
<td>It's yours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows him.</td>
<td>It's his car.</td>
<td>It's his.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows her.</td>
<td>It's her car.</td>
<td>It's hers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows them.</td>
<td>It's their car.</td>
<td>It's theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study these examples:

- ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, I know him, but I can’t remember his name.’
- She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?
  B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- That's my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm going out with a friend of mine this evening. (not a friend of me)
62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1. Do you know that man? Yes, I know him, but I can’t remember his name.

2. Do you know that woman? Yes, I know ________ , but I can’t remember ____________.

3. Do you know those people? Yes, I __________________ , but I __________________ names.

4. Do you know me? Yes, I __________________ , but I ____________________________.

62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her _________ to stay with us at our house.
2. He invited us to stay with _______________ at his house.
3. They invited me to stay with __________________________________________________________________ house.
4. I invited them to stay ______________________________________________________________________ house.
5. She invited us to stay ______________________________________________________________________ house.
6. Did you invite him __________________________________________________________________________ house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him __________ address, and ________ he gave me his.
2. I gave her __________ address, and she gave me ____________.
3. He gave me __________ address, and I gave ____________.
4. We gave them __________ address, and they gave ________________.
5. She gave him __________ address, and he gave ____________.
6. You gave us __________ address, and we gave ________________.
7. They gave you __________ address, and you gave ________________.

62.4 Write him/her/your etc.

1. Where’s Amanda? Have you seen ________ ?
2. Where are my keys? Where did I put ____________ ?
3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to ____________ ?
4. We don’t see __________ neighbours much. They’re not at home very often.
5. ‘I can’t find my pen. Can I use __________ ,?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
6. We’re going to the cinema. Why don’t you come with __________ ?
7. Did your sister pass __________ exams?
8. Some people talk about __________ jobs all the time.
9. Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of ____________ .
myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A

He's looking at himself.

They're enjoying themselves.

I → me → myself
he → him → himself
she → her → herself
you → you → yourself
we → us → ourselves
they → them → themselves

- I looked at myself in the mirror.
- He cut himself with a knife.
- She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt herself.
- Please help yourself. (one person)
- Please help yourselves. (two or more people)
- We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves.
- They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

B

Compare:

me/him/them etc.

- She is looking at him.
  - different people

- You never talk to me.
- I didn't pay for them.
- I'm sorry. Did I hurt you?

myself/himself/themselves etc.

- He is looking at himself.
  - the same person

- Sometimes I talk to myself.
- They paid for themselves.
- Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.

C

by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:

- I went on holiday by myself. (= I went alone)
- ‘Was she with friends?’ ‘No, she was by herself.’

D

each other

- Kate and Helen are good friends. They know each other well.
  (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
- Paul and I live near each other. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:

- Tim and Sue looked at each other.
  (= he looked at her, she looked at him)

- Tim and Sue looked at themselves.
  (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)
63.1 Complete the sentences with myself/yourself etc.
1 He looked at ___________________________________________ in the mirror.
2 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with ____________________________ .
3 Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed ____________________________ .
4 My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed ____________________________ .
5 I picked up a very hot plate and burnt ____________________________ .
6 He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ____________________________ .
7 I want to know more about you. Tell me about ____________________________ . (one person)
8 Goodbye! Have a good trip and look after ____________________________ ! (two people)

63.2 Write sentences with by myself / by yourself etc.
1 I went on holiday alone. ____________________________________________ .
2 When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he ____________________________ .
3 Don’t go out alone. ____________________________________________ .
4 I went to the cinema alone. ____________________________________________ .
5 My sister lives alone. My sister ____________________________________________ .
6 Many people live alone. Many people ____________________________________________ .

63.3 Write sentences with each other.
1 I like her. I like him. They like each other.
2 I can’t see her. I can’t see him. They can’t.
3 I phone her a lot. I phone him a lot. They.
4 I don’t know him. I don’t know her. They.
5 I’m sitting next to him. I’m sitting next to her.
6 I gave her a present. I gave him a present.

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

  each other or ourselves/yourselves/themselves or us/you/them

1 Paul and I live near ____________________________________________ .
2 Who are those people? Do you know ____________________________________________ ?
3 You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help ____________________________ .
4 There’s food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help ____________________________ .
5 We didn’t go to Emily’s party. She didn’t invite ____________________________________________ .
6 When we go on holiday, we always enjoy ____________________________________________ .
7 Mary and Jane were at school together, but they never see ____________________________________________ now.
8 Diane and I are very good friends. We’ve known ____________________________________________ for a long time.
9 ‘Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?’ ‘Yes, but I didn’t speak to ____________________________________________ .’
10 Many people talk to ____________________________________________ when they’re alone.
-'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)

We normally use -'s for people:
- I stayed at my sister's house. (not the house of my sister)
- Have you met Mr Black's wife? (not the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to James's party?
- Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:
- Sophie's hair is longer than Kate's. (= Kate's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's my mother's.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at Paul's.' (= Paul's house)

friend's and friends'

my friend's house = one friend
(= his house or her house)

We write 's after

friend/student/mother etc. (singular):
- my mother's car (one mother)
- my father's car (one father)

my friends' house = two or more friends
(= their house)

We write ' after

friends/students/parents etc. (plural):
- my parents' car (two parents)

We use of ... for things, places etc.:
- Look at the roof of that building. (not that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning of the film. (not the film's beginning)
- What's the name of this village?
- Do you know the cause of the problem?
- You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.

mine/yours etc. → Unit 61  whose ... ? → Unit 61  -'s (he's / Kate's etc.) → Appendix 4.5
64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.

1. Brian is Helen's husband.
2. Sarah is Daniel's mother.
3. Helen is James's wife.
4. James is Sarah's uncle.
5. James is Helen's brother.
6. Sarah is Daniel's wife.
7. Helen is Daniel's mother.
8. Sarah is James's sister.
9. Paul is Daniel's husband.
10. Paul is Daniel's brother.
11. Daniel is Sarah's nephew.

Helen and Brian are married.
They have a son, James, and a daughter, Sarah.
Sarah is married to Paul.
Sarah and Paul have a son, Daniel.

64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.

1. Whose is this? Alice's
2. Whose is this? And these?
3. And this?
4. And these?
5. And this?
6. And these?

64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. my sister's house
2. What is the name of this village? OK
3. Do you like the colour of this coat? OK
4. Do you know the phone number of Simon? OK
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. OK
6. Write your name at the top of the page. OK
7. For me, the morning is the best part of the day. OK
8. The favourite colour of Paula is blue. OK
9. When is the birthday of your mother? OK
10. The house of my parents isn't very big. OK
11. The walls of this house are very thin. OK
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. OK
13. Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? OK
14. The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment. OK
a/an ... = one thing or person:
- Rachel works in a bank. (not in bank)
- Can I ask a question? (not ask question)
- I haven’t got a computer.
- There’s a woman at the bus stop.

an (not a) before a/e/i/o/u:
- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I’m going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

also an hour (h is not pronounced: an hour)
but a university (pronounced yuniversity)
a European country (pronounced yuropian)

another (= an + other) is one word:
- Can I have another cup of coffee?

We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:
- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It’s a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... for jobs etc.:
- A: What’s your job?
  B: I’m a dentist. (not I’m dentist)
- ‘What does Mark do?’ ‘He’s an engineer.’
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?
65.1 Write a or an.

1. an old book 4. an airport 7. an university
2. a window 5. a new airport 8. an hour
3. a horse 6. an organisation 9. an economic problem

65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bird</th>
<th>fruit</th>
<th>mountain</th>
<th>river</th>
<th>musical instrument</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>game</td>
<td>planet</td>
<td>tool</td>
<td>vegetable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A duck is a bird.
2. A carrot is a vegetable.
3. Tennis is a game.
4. A hammer is a tool.
5. Everest is a mountain.
6. Saturn is a planet.
7. A banana is a fruit.
8. The Amazon is a river.
9. A rose is a flower.
10. A trumpet is a musical instrument.

65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect  dentist  shop assistant  photographer
electrician  nurse  taxi driver

1. She's a dentist.
2. He's an architect.
3. She's a nurse.
4. He's a shop assistant.

5. Can I help you?
6. She's a photographer.
7. He's a taxi driver.
8. And you? I'm a doctor.

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use a/an where necessary.

I want to ask you a question.

Rebecca works in a bookshop.
Jane wants to learn a foreign language.
Mike lives in a house.
This evening I'm going to a party.

1. Tom never wears a hat.
2. I can't ride a bicycle.
3. My brother is an artist.
4. old house  artist
5. party  question
6. bookshop  foreign language
7. hat  bicycle

I want to ask you a question.
The plural of a noun is usually -s:

- singular (= one) → plural (= two or more)
- a flower → some flowers
- a train → two trains
- one week → a few weeks
- a nice place → some nice places
- this student → these students

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-s / -sh / -ch / -x → -es</td>
<td>bus → buses, dish → dishes, church → churches, box → boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td>potato → potatoes, tomato → tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y → -ies</td>
<td>baby → babies, dictionary → dictionaries, party → parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but -ay / -ey / -oy → -ys</td>
<td>day → days, monkey → monkeys, boy → boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-f / -fe → -ves</td>
<td>shelf → shelves, knife → knives, wife → wives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These things are plural in English:

- scissors
- glasses
- trousers
- jeans
- shorts
- tights
- pyjamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.: 
- I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. *not a new jeans*

Some plurals do not end in -s:

- this man → these men
- a woman → some women
- a child → many children
- one foot → two feet
- a tooth → all my teeth
- a mouse → some mice
- that sheep → those sheep
- a fish → a lot of fish

also a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.: 
- She’s a nice person. 
- They are nice people. *not nice persons*

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have etc.: 
- A lot of people speak English. *not speaks*
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police is plural: 
- The police want to talk to anybody who saw the accident. *not The police wants*

by → Units 21, 63, 109 at/on → Units 103, 106–107 preposition + -ing → Unit 112
Exercises

66.1 Write the plural.

1 flower ___________________ 5 umbrella ___________________ 9 family ___________________
2 boat ___________________ 6 address ___________________ 10 foot ___________________
3 woman ___________________ 7 knife ___________________ 11 holiday ___________________
4 city ___________________ 8 sandwich ___________________ 12 potato ___________________

66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 There are a lot of ______________ in the field. 4 Lucy has got two ______________.
2 Gary is cleaning his ______________. 5 There are a lot of ______________ in the river.
3 There are three ______________ at the bus stop. 6 ______________ are falling from the tree.

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1 I’m going to buy some flowers. ________________
2 I need a _______________.

3 It’s a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
4 There was a woman in the car with two mens.
5 Sheep eat grass.
6 David is married and has three childs.
7 Most of my friend are student.
8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
9 We went fishing, but we didn’t catch many fish.
10 Do you know many persons in this town?
11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it?
12 The town centre is usually full of tourist.
13 I don’t like mice. I’m afraid of them.
14 This scissor isn’t very sharp.

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1 It’s a nice place. Many people ______________ there on holiday. go or goes?
2 Some people ______________ always late. is or are?
3 The new city hall is not a very beautiful building. Most don’t or doesn’t?
4 A lot of people ______________ television every day. watch or watches?
5 Three people ______________ injured in the accident. was or were?
6 How many people ______________ in that house? live or lives?
7 ______________ the police know the cause of the explosion? Do or Does?
8 The police ______________ looking for the stolen car. is or are?
9 I need my glasses, but I can’t find ______________. it or them?
10 I’m going to buy ______________ new jeans today. a or some?
A noun can be countable or uncountable.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) car (a) man (a) bottle (a) house (a) key (an) idea (an) accident

You can use one/two/three (etc.) + countable nouns (you can count them):

one bottle   two bottles   three men   four houses

Countable nouns can be singular (= one) or plural (= two or more):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>a car</th>
<th>the car</th>
<th>my car</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>cars</td>
<td>two cars</td>
<td>the cars</td>
<td>some cars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’ve got a car.
- New cars are very expensive.
- There aren’t many cars in the car park.

You can’t use the singular (car/bottle/key etc.) alone. You need a/an:

- We can’t get into the house without a key. (not without key)

Uncountable nouns

For example: water air rice salt plastic money music tennis

water   salt   money   music

You can’t say one/two/three (etc.) + these things: one-water two-musies

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

money the money my money some money much money etc.

- I’ve got some money.
- There isn’t much money in the box.
- Money isn’t everything.

You can’t use a/an + uncountable nouns: money music water

But you can say a piece of … / a bottle of … etc. + uncountable noun:

a bottle of water   a carton of milk   a bar of chocolate
a piece of cheese   a bottle of perfume   a piece of music
a bowl of rice      a cup of coffee     a game of tennis

a/an → Unit 65  countable/uncountable 2 → Unit 68
Exercises

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bucket</th>
<th>envelope</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>sand</th>
<th>toothbrush</th>
<th>wallet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>egg</td>
<td>jug</td>
<td>salt</td>
<td>spoon</td>
<td>toothpaste</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It's ________ salt
2. It's _______ a spoon
3. It's ___________.
4. It's ________________.
5. It's ____________.
6. It's ____________.
7. It's ____________.
8. It's ________________.
9. It's ____________.
10. It's ____________.
11. It's ____________.
12. It's ________________.

67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.

1. I haven't got watch. _______ a watch
2. Do you like cheese? _______ OK
3. I never wear hat. __________
4. Are you looking for job? __________
5. Kate doesn't eat meat. __________
6. Kate eats apple every day. __________
7. I'm going to party tonight. __________
8. Music is wonderful thing. __________
9. Jamaica is island. __________
10. I don't need key. __________
11. Everybody needs food. __________
12. I've got good idea. __________
13. Can you drive car? __________
14. Do you want cup of coffee? __________
15. I don't like coffee without milk. __________
16. Don't go out without umbrella. __________

67.3 What are these things? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bar</th>
<th>cup</th>
<th>loaf</th>
<th>bread</th>
<th>milk</th>
<th>tea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bowl</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>piece</td>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carton</td>
<td>jar</td>
<td>piece</td>
<td>honey</td>
<td>soup</td>
<td>wood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. _______ a carton of milk
2. _______ __________________
3. _______ __________________
4. _______ __________________
5. _______ __________________
6. _______ __________________
7. _______ __________________
8. _______ __________________
9. _______ __________________
a cake / some cake / some cakes
(countable/uncountable 2)

A

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):
- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):
- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):
- I need some water.
- Would you like some cheese?
  (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a and some:
- Nicole bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, made some phone calls, and listened to some music.

B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

- a cake
- some cakes
- some cake or a piece of cake
- a chicken
- some chickens
- some chicken or a piece of chicken

Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:
- I want something to read. I’m going to buy a paper.
- but I want to make a shopping list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not a paper)

C

advice bread furniture hair information news weather work

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say a/an ... (a bread, an advice), and they can't be plural (advices, furnitures etc.).

- Can I talk to you? I need some advice. (not an advice)
- I’m going to buy some bread. (not a bread)
- They’ve got some very nice furniture in their house. (not furnitures)
- Silvia has got very long hair. (not hairs)
- I’d like some information about hotels in London. (not informations)
- Listen! I’ve just had some good news. (not a good news)
- It’s nice weather today. (not a nice weather)
- ‘Do you like your job?’ ‘Yes, but it’s hard work.’ (not a hard work)

We say a job (but not a work):
- I’ve got a new job. (not a new work)
Exercises

68.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to write sentences (I bought ...).

1. I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.
2. 
3. 
4. 

68.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ... ? or Would you like some ... ?

2. Would you like 
3. Would 

68.3 Write a/an or some.

1. I read a book and listened to some music.
2. I need money. I want to buy food.
3. We met interesting people at the party.
4. I’m going to open window to get fresh air.
5. Rachel didn’t eat much for lunch – only apple and bread.
6. We live in house. There’s nice garden with beautiful trees.
7. I’m going to make a table. First I need wood.
8. Listen to me carefully. I’m going to give you advice.
9. I want to write a letter. I need paper and pen.

68.4 Which is right?

1. I’m going to buy some new shoes. (shoes is right)
2. Martin has got brown eyes.
3. Paula has got short black hair.
4. The tour guide gave us some information about the city.
5. We’re going to buy some new chairs.
6. We’re going to buy some new furniture.
7. It’s hard to find a work / job at the moment.
8. We had wonderful weather when we were on holiday.
a/an and the

**a/an**

There are *three* windows here.
*a* window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I've got a car.
  (there are many cars and I've got one)
- Can I ask a *question*? (there are many questions - can I ask one?)
- Is there a hotel near here? (there are many hotels - is there one near here?)
- Paris is an interesting *city*.
  (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is a student.
  (there are many students and Lisa is one)

**the**

Can you open the window?

There is only *one* window here - the window.

- I'm going to clean the car tomorrow.
  (= my car)
- Can you repeat the question, please? (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice.
  (= our hotel)
- Paris is the capital of France.
  (there is only one capital of France)
- Lisa is the youngest student in her class.
  (there is only one youngest student in her class)

**Compare a and the:**

- I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap, but the shirt was expensive.
  (= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

We say the ... when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

- the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room)
- the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house)
- the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)

- 'Where's Tom? 'In the kitchen.'
  (= the kitchen of this house or flat)
- Turn off the light and close the door.
  (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from the centre?
  (= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to the manager, please.
  (= the manager of this shop etc.)
Exercises

69.1 Write a/an or the.

1. We enjoyed our trip. _______ hotel was very nice.
2. ‘Can I ask _______ question?’ ‘Sure. What do you want to know?’
4. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s in _______ garden.’
5. Eve is _______ interesting person. You should meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to _______ city centre?
   B: Yes, go straight on and then take _______ next turning left.
7. A: Shall we go out for _______ meal this evening?
   B: Yes, that’s _______ good idea.
8. It’s _______ nice morning. Let’s go for _______ walk.
9. Amanda is _______ student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be _______ journalist.
   She lives with two friends in _______ apartment near _______ college where she is studying.
   _______ apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have got two children, _______ boy and _______ girl. _______ boy is seven years old, and _______ girl is three. Peter works in _______ factory. Mary hasn’t got _______ job at the moment.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:

airport cup dictionary door floor picture

1. Can you open _______ door, please?
2. How far is it to _______ airport?
3. Can I have _______ of coffee, please?
4. That’s _______ nice _______. — I like it.
5. Can you pass me _______ _______, please?
6. Why are you sitting on _______ _______?

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1. Don’t forget to turn off light when you go out. _______ turn off the light
2. Enjoy your trip, and don’t forget to send me postcard.
3. What is name of this village?
4. Canada is very big country.
5. What is largest city in Canada?
6. I like this room, but I don’t like colour of carpet.
7. ‘Are you OK?’ ‘No, I’ve got headache.’
8. We live in old house near station.
9. What is name of director of film we saw last night?
We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is **the** name of this street? *(there is only one name)*
- Who is **the** best player in your team? *(there is only one best player)*
- Can you tell me **the** time, please? *(= the time now)*
- My office is on **the** first floor. *(= the first floor of the building)*

Don't forget **the**:

- Do you live near **the** city centre? *(not near city centre)*
- Excuse me, where is **the** nearest bank? *(not where is nearest ...)*

**the same** ...

- We live in **the** same street. *(not in same street)*
- 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're **the** same.' *(not they're same)*

We say:

**the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country**

- **The** sky is blue and **the** sun is shining.
- Do you live in a town or in **the** country?

**the police / the fire brigade / the army** *(of a city, country etc.)*

- My brother is a soldier. He's in **the** army.
- What do you think of **the** police? Do they do a good job?

**the top / the end / the middle / the left** etc.

- Write your name at **the** top of the page.
- My house is at **the** end of the street.
- The table is in **the** middle of the room.
- Do you drive on **the** right or on **the** left in your country?

(played) **the piano / the guitar / the trumpet** etc. *(musical instruments)*

- Paula is learning to play **the** piano.

**the radio**

- I listen to **the** radio a lot.

**the Internet**

- Do you use **the** Internet much?

We do not use **the** with:

**television / TV**

- I watch **TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?

**but** Can you turn off **the** television? *(= the TV set)*

**breakfast / lunch / dinner**

- What did you have for **breakfast**? *(not the breakfast)*
- **Dinner** is ready!

**next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday** etc.

- I'm not working **next week**. *(not the next week)*
- Did you have a holiday **last summer**? *(not the last summer)*
Exercises

70.1 Put in the where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1. What is the name of this street?  
2. What’s on television tonight?  
3. Our apartment is on second floor.  
4. Would you like to go to moon?  
5. Which is best hotel in this town?  
6. What time is lunch?  
7. How far is it to city centre?  
8. We’re going away at end of May.  
9. What are you doing next weekend?  
10. I didn’t like her first time I met her.  
11. I’m going out after dinner.  
12. Internet is a good way of getting information.  
13. My sister got married last month.  
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right.  
15. We live in country about ten miles from nearest town.

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use the same + these words:

age  colour  problem  street  time

1. I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street.  
2. I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at the same time.  
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are the same age.  
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are the same colour.  
5. I’ve got no money and you’ve got no money. We’ve got the same problem.

70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the if necessary.

1. The sun is shining.  
2. She’s playing  
3. They’re having  
4. He’s watching  
5. They’re swimming in  
6. Tim’s name is at of the list.

70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

capital  dinner  police  lunch  middle  name  sky  television

dinner

1. We had dinner at a restaurant last night.  
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don’t remember  
3. The sky is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.  
4. Sometimes there are some good films on  late at night.  
5. Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called  
6. Tokyo is of Japan.  
7. ‘What did you have for ?’ ‘A salad.’  
8. I woke up in of the night.
go to work  go home  go to the cinema

We say:

(go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work
   ☐ Bye! I’m going to work now. (not to the work)
   ☐ I finish work at 5 o’clock every day.

(go) to school, (be) at school, start school, leave school etc.
   ☐ What did you learn at school today? (not at the school)
   ☐ Some children don’t like school.

(go) to university/college, (be) at university/college
   ☐ Helen wants to go to university when she leaves school.
   ☐ What did you study at college?

(go) to hospital, (be) in hospital
   ☐ Jack had an accident. He had to go to hospital.

(go) to prison, (be) in prison
   ☐ Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to church, (be) in/at church
   ☐ David usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to bed, (be) in bed
   ☐ I’m tired. I’m going to bed. (not to the bed)
   ☐ ‘Where’s Jane?’ ‘She’s in bed.’

(go) home, (be) at home etc.
   ☐ I’m tired. I’m going home. (not to home)
   ☐ Are you going out tonight, or are you staying at home?

We say:

(go to) the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office / the station / the airport / the city centre
   ☐ I never go to the theatre, but I go to the cinema a lot.
   ☐ ‘Are you going to the bank?’ ‘No, to the post office.’
   ☐ The number 5 bus goes to the airport; the number 8 goes to the city centre.

(go to) the doctor, the dentist
   ☐ You’re not well. Why don’t you go to the doctor?
   ☐ I have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
Exercises

71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 He’s in ____________.
2 They’re at ____________.
3 She’s in ____________.
4 She’s at ____________.
5 They’re at ____________.
6 He’s in ____________.

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.
- bank
- bed
- church
- home
- post office
- school
- station

1 I need to change some money. I have to go to ____________. the bank
2 David usually goes to ____________ on Sundays.
3 In Britain, children go to ____________ from the age of five.
4 There were a lot of people at ____________ waiting for the train.
5 I phoned you last night, but you weren’t at ____________.
6 I’m going to ____________ now. Goodnight!
7 I’m going to ____________ to get some stamps.

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 If you want to catch a plane, you ____________ the airport.
2 If you want to see a film, you go to ____________.
3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you ____________
4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you ____________
5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you ____________
6 If you want to study after you leave school, you ____________
7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you ____________

71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We went to cinema last night.
2 I finish work at 5 o’clock every day.
3 Lisa wasn’t feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
4 I wasn’t feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
5 Why is Angela always late for work?
6 ‘Where are your children?’ ‘They’re at school.’
7 We have no money in bank.
8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9 What time do you usually get home from work?
10 Do you live far from city centre?
11 ‘Where shall we meet?’ ‘At station.’
12 Jim is ill. He’s in hospital.
13 Kate takes her children to school every day.
14 Would you like to go to university?
15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?

OK
I like music  I hate exams

Do not use the for general ideas:
- I like music, especially classical music.  
  (not the music ... the classical music)
- We don't eat meat very often.  (not the meat)
- Life is not possible without water.  
  (not The life ... the water)
- I hate exams.  (not the exams)
- Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.

Do not use the for games and sports:
- My favourite sports are football and skiing.  (not the football ... the skiing)

Do not use the for languages or school subjects (history/geography/physics/biology etc.):  
- Do you think English is difficult?  (not the English)
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

Flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- Flowers are beautiful.  
  (= flowers in general)

- I love this garden.  
  The flowers are beautiful.  
  (= the flowers in this garden)

- I don't like cold weather.  
  (= cold weather in general)

- The weather isn't very good today.  
  (= the weather today)

- We don't eat fish very often.  
  (= fish in general)

- We had a great meal last night.  The fish was excellent.  
  (= the fish we ate last night)

- Are you interested in history?  
  (= history in general)

- Do you know much about the history of your country?
Exercises

72.1 What do you think about these things?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big cities</th>
<th>computer games</th>
<th>exams</th>
<th>jazz</th>
<th>parties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>dogs</td>
<td>housework</td>
<td>museums</td>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ... I don't like ... I love ... I hate ... or ... is/are all right

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I'm (very) interested in ...</th>
<th>I know a lot about ...</th>
<th>I don't know much about ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm not interested in ...</td>
<td>I know a little about ...</td>
<td>I don't know anything about ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 (history)
2 (politics)
3 (sport)
4 (art)
5 (astronomy)
6 (economics)

72.3 Which is right?

1 My favourite sport is football / the football. (football is right)
2 I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)
3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4 Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
6 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'
9 'What does your brother do?' 'He sells computers / the computers.'
10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15 Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17 I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
18 Do you want to see photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday?
19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.
the ... (names of places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of places:
- France is a very large country. (not the France)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use the in names with ‘republic’/’states’/’kingdom’:
- the Czech Republic
- the United States of America (the USA)
- the United Kingdom (the UK)

the -s (plural names)

We use the with plural names of countries/islands/mountains:
- the Netherlands the Canary Islands
- the Philippines the Alps

B

Seas, rivers etc.

We use the with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:
- the Atlantic (Ocean) the Mediterranean (Sea) the Amazon
- the (River) Nile the Suez Canal the Black Sea

C

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of streets, squares etc.:
- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:
- Kennedy Airport Westminster Abbey London Zoo
- Victoria Station Cambridge University Edinburgh Castle

But we use the with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:
- the Regent Hotel the National Theatre
- the Science Museum the Odeon (cinema)

D

the ... of ...

We use the + names with ... of ...:
- the Museum of Modern Art the University of California
- the Great Wall of China the Tower of London

We say the north / the south / the east / the west (of ...):
- I’ve been to the north of Italy, but not to the south.
73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use *The* if necessary.

1. **Cairo** is the capital of Egypt.
2. **The Atlantic** is between Africa and America.
3. is a country in northern Europe.
4. is a river in South America.
5. is the largest continent in the world.
6. is the largest ocean.
7. is a river in Europe.
8. is a country in East Africa.
9. is between Canada and Mexico.
10. are mountains in South America.
11. is the capital of Thailand.
12. are mountains in central Europe.
13. is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14. is an island in the Caribbean.
15. are a group of islands near Florida.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alps</th>
<th>Amazon</th>
<th>Andes</th>
<th>Asia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic</td>
<td>Bahamas</td>
<td>Bangkok</td>
<td>Cairo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>Pacific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red Sea</td>
<td>Rhine</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>United States</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

73.2 Write the **where** necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write **OK**.

1. Kevin lives in Newton Street.
2. We went to see a play at National Theatre.
3. Have you ever been to China?
4. Have you ever been to Philippines?
5. Have you ever been to south of France?
6. Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?
7. Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?
8. Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?
9. Europe is bigger than Australia.
10. Belgium is smaller than Netherland.
11. Which river is longer—Mississippi or Nile?
12. Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?
13. We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road.
14. How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station *(in London)*?
15. Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
17. I hope to go to United States next year.
18. Mary comes from west of Ireland.
19. Alan is a student at Manchester University.
20. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.

→ Additional exercises 33–34 (pages 269–70)
We use *this/that/these/those* with a noun (*this picture / those girls* etc.) or without a noun:

- **with a noun**
  - *This hotel* is expensive, but it's very nice.
  - *Who's that girl?* 'I don't know.'
  - Do you like *these shoes*? I bought them last week.
  - *Those apples* look nice. Can I have one?
  - *This* is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
  - 'Excuse me, is *this* your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
  - *Who's that?* (= Who is that person?)
  - Which shoes do you prefer - *these* or *those*?

- **without a noun**

*that* = something that has happened:

- 'I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' 'That's all right.'
- *That* was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

*that* = what somebody has just said:

- 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, that's right.'
- 'Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know *that*.'
- 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, that's nice.'

We use *this* ... and *is that* ... ? on the telephone:

- Hi Sarah, *this* is David.
  - *(this = the speaker)*
- *Is that* Sarah?
  - *(that = the other person)*

We use *this* is ... to introduce people:

- A: Brian, *this is* Chris.
- B: Hello, Chris – nice to meet you.
- C: Hi.
Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:

1. Do you like these shoes?
2. Who lives in that house?
3. How much are these postcards?
4. Look at those birds.
5. Excuse me, is this seat free?
6. These plates are dirty.

74.2 Write questions: Is this/that your ... ? or Are these/those your ... ?

1. Is this your bag?
2. Is that your ambulance?
3. Are these books yours?
4. Are these your keys?
5. Is this your bicycle?
6. Are these your glasses?
7. Is this your watch?
8. Are these your keys?
9. Are these your glasses?

74.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that's or that.

1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.
   B: That's all right.
2. A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
   B: Oh, a pity. Why not?
3. on the phone
   SUE: Hello, Jane.
   JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?
   B: not true!
5. A: Beth plays the piano very well.
   B: Does she? I didn't know.
6. Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.
   PAUL: Mark, my sister, Helen.
   MARK: Hi, Helen.
7. A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
   B: OK. Forget it!
8. A: You're a friend of Tim's, aren't you?
   B: Yes, right.
one/ones

one (= a ...)

These chocolates are good. Would you like one?

Would you like one?  
= Would you like a chocolate?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

□ I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)
□ A: Is there a bank near here?
□ B: Yes, there's one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

one and ones

one (singular)

Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

this one / that one

□ Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

□ A: Which hotel did you stay at?
□ B: The one opposite the station.
□ I found this key. Is it the one you lost?

the ... one

□ I don't like the black coat, but I like the brown one.
□ Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an ... one

□ This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
□ That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one.

ones (plural)

Which ones? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

these/those or these ones / those ones

□ Which flowers do you want? These or those? or These ones or those ones?

the ones ...

□ A: Which books are yours?
□ B: The ones on the table.
□ I found these keys. Are they the ones you lost?

the ... ones

□ I don't like the red shoes, but I like the green ones.
□ Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some ... ones

□ These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
□ My shoes are very old. I'm going to buy some new ones.
Exercises

75.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B’s answers. Use one (not a/an ... ) in the answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A:</th>
<th>B:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1: Can you lend me a pen?</td>
<td>I haven't got one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2: Would you like to have a car?</td>
<td>No, I don't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3: Have you got a bike?</td>
<td>No, but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4: Can you lend me an umbrella?</td>
<td>I'm sorry, but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5: Would you like a cup of coffee?</td>
<td>No, thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6: Is there a chemist near here?</td>
<td>Yes,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B doesn't need a car  B has just had a cup of coffee
there's a chemist in Mill Road  B is going to get a bike
B hasn't got a pen  B hasn't got an umbrella

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

better  big  clean  different  new  old

1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2 I'm going to sell my car and buy big
3 That's not a very good photograph, but this is different
4 I want today's newspaper. This is new
5 This box is too small. I need clean
6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to better

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use one/ones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A:</th>
<th>B:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1: A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station.</td>
<td>The one opposite the station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2: A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green.</td>
<td>Which one?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3: A is looking at a house. It has a red door.</td>
<td>With what?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4: A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.</td>
<td>Are those your CDs?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5: A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black.</td>
<td>Do you like that jacket?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6: A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.</td>
<td>That's an interesting picture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7: A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.</td>
<td>Do you know that girl?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8: A is looking at some flowers in the garden.</td>
<td>Those flowers are beautiful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9: A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses.</td>
<td>Who's that man?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10: A took some photos at the party last week.</td>
<td>Did I show you my photos?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
some and any

Use **some** in positive sentences:
- I'm going to buy some clothes.
- There's some ice in the fridge.
- We made some mistakes.

Use **any** in negative sentences:
- I'm not going to buy any clothes.
- There isn't any milk in the fridge.
- We didn't make any mistakes.

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (not **some**):
- Is there any ice in the fridge?
- Has he got any friends?
- Do you need any help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we offer things (Would you like ...?):
- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we ask for things (Can I have ...? etc.):
- A: Can I have some soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me some money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

some and any without a noun

- I didn't take any photographs, but Jane took some. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any. (= any coffee)
- I've just made some coffee. Would you like some? (= some coffee)
- 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got any.' (= any luggage)
- 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are some in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

something / somebody (or someone)

- She said something.
- I saw somebody (or someone).
- Would you like something to eat?
- Somebody's at the door.

anything / anybody (or anyone)

- She didn't say anything.
- I didn't see anybody (or anyone).
- Are you doing anything tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has anybody seen her?
76.1 Write some or any.

1. I bought ______ cheese, but I didn’t buy ______ bread.
2. I’m going to the post office. I need ______ stamps.
3. There aren’t ______ shops in this part of town.
4. Gary and Alice haven’t got ______ children.
5. Have you got ______ brothers or sisters?
6. There are ______ beautiful flowers in the garden.
7. Do you know ______ good hotels in London?
8. ‘Would you like ______ tea?’ ‘Yes, please.’
9. When we were on holiday, we visited ______ very interesting places.
10. Don’t buy ______ rice. We don’t need ______.
11. I went out to buy ______ oranges, but they didn’t have ______ in the shop.
12. I’m thirsty. Can I have ______ water, please?

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + the words in the box.

air cheese friends help milk questions
batteries languages photographs

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there ______ shampoo?
2. The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you ____________________________.
3. I haven’t got my camera, so I can’t take ____________________________.
4. Do you speak ______ foreign?
5. Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with ____________________________ of mine.
6. Can I have ____________________________ in my coffee, please?
7. The radio isn’t working. There aren’t ____________________________ in it.
8. It’s hot in this office. I’m going out for ____________________________.
9. A: Would you like ____________________________ ?
   B: No, thank you. I’ve had enough to eat.
10. I can do this job alone. I don’t need ____________________________.

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use some or any.

1. Jane didn’t take any photographs, but ______ I took some. (I/take)
2. ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I haven’t got any.’ (I/not/have)
3. ‘Do you need any money?’ ‘No, thank you. ____________________________.’ (I/have)
4. ‘Can you lend me some money?’ ‘I’m sorry, but ____________________________.’ (I/not/have)
5. The tomatoes in the shop didn’t look very good, so ____________________________ (I/not/buy)
6. There were some nice oranges in the shop, so ____________________________ (I/buy)
7. ‘How many phone calls did you make yesterday?’ ‘__________________________.’ (I/not/make)

76.4 Write something/somebody or anything/anybody.

1. A woman stopped me and said ______ something, but I didn’t understand.
2. ‘What’s wrong?’ ‘There’s ____________________________ in my eye.’
3. Do you know ____________________________ about politics?
4. I went to the shop, but I didn’t buy ____________________________.
5. ____________________________ has broken the window. I don’t know who.
6. There isn’t ____________________________ in the bag. It’s empty.
7. I’m looking for my keys. Has ____________________________ seen them?
8. Would you like ____________________________ to drink?
9. I didn’t eat ____________________________ because I wasn’t hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don’t tell ____________________________.
not + any  no  none

The car park is empty.
There aren’t any cars
There are no cars

How many cars are there in the car park?
None.

not (-n’t) + any
- There aren’t any cars in the car park.
- Tracey and Jeff haven’t got any children.
- You can have some coffee, but I don’t want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)
no ... = not any or not a
- There are no cars in the car park. (= there aren’t any cars)
- We’ve got no coffee. (= we haven’t got any coffee)
- It’s a nice house, but there’s no garden. (= there isn’t a garden)

We use no ... especially after have (got) and there is/are.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no
- They haven’t got any children. or They’ve got no children.
  (not They haven’t got no children)
- There isn’t any sugar in your coffee. or There’s no sugar in your coffee.

no and none

Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):
- We’ve got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):
- ‘How much money have you got?’ ‘None.’ (= no money)
- ‘Were there any problems?’ ‘No, none.’ (= no problems)

none and no-one

none = 0 (zero)

no-one = nobody

None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people):
- ‘How much money have you got?’ ‘None.’ (= no money)
- ‘How many people did you meet?’ ‘None.’ (= no people)

No-one is an answer for Who?:
- ‘Who did you meet?’ ‘No-one.’ or ‘Nobody.’
77.1 Write these sentences again with no.

1. We haven’t got any money. We’ve got no money.
2. There aren’t any shops near here. There are
3. Carla hasn’t got any free time.
4. There isn’t a light in this room.

Write these sentences again with any.

5. We’ve got no money. We haven’t got any money.
6. There’s no milk in the fridge.
7. There are no buses today.
8. Tom has got no brothers or sisters.

77.2 Write no or any.

1. There’s ______ sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he hasn’t got ______ children.
3. Sue doesn’t speak ______ foreign languages.
4. I’m afraid there’s ______ coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. ‘Look at those birds!’ ‘Birds? Where? I can’t see ______ birds.’
6. ‘Do you know where Jessica is?’ ‘No, I’ve got ______ idea.’

Write no, any or none.

7. There aren’t ____________ pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was ________ wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn’t have ____________ in the shop.
10. Everything was correct. There were ________ mistakes.
11. ‘How much luggage have you got?’ ____________.’
12. ‘How much luggage have you got?’ ‘I haven’t got ____________.’

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>answer</th>
<th>difference</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>furniture</th>
<th>heating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>problems</td>
<td>questions</td>
<td>queue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Everything was OK. There were ________ problems ________.
2. Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they’ve got ____________.
3. I’m not going to answer ____________ ________.
4. He’s always alone. He’s got ____________ ________.
5. There is ______________________ between these two machines. They’re exactly the same.
6. There wasn’t ______________________ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to phone you yesterday, but there was ____________ ________.
8. The house is cold because there isn’t ____________ ________.
9. There was ______________________ outside the cinema, so we didn’t have to wait to get our tickets.

77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? Two ________ or A lot ________ or None ________.
2. How many sisters have you got?
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
4. How many photographs have you taken today?
5. How many legs has a snake got?
not + anybody/anyone
nobody/no-one
(for people)

- There isn’t {anybody anyone} in the room.
- There is {nobody no-one} in the room.
- A: Who is in the room?
  B: Nobody / No-one.

-body and -one are the same:
anybody = anyone nobody = no-one

not + anything
nothing
(for things)

- There isn’t anything in the bag.
- There is nothing in the bag.
- A: What’s in the bag?
  B: Nothing.

not + anybody/anyone
not + anything

- I don’t know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybody
nothing = not + anything

- I’m lonely. I’ve got nobody to talk to. (= I haven’t got anybody)
- The house is empty. There is no-one in it. (= There isn’t anyone in it.)

- I can’t remember anything.

nothing = not + anything

- She said nothing. (= She didn’t say anything.)
- There’s nothing to eat. (= There isn’t anything to eat.)

You can use nobody/no-one/nothing at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. Nobody lives there. (not Anybody lives there)
- ‘Who did you speak to?’ ‘No-one.’
- Nothing happened. (not Anything happened)
- ‘What did you say?’ ‘Nothing.’

Remember:

- He doesn’t know anything. (not He doesn’t know nothing)
- Don’t tell anybody. (not Don’t tell nobody)
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not There isn’t nothing)

some and any → Unit 76  any and no → Unit 77  somebody/anything/nowhere etc. → Unit 79
78.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one or nothing.
1 There isn’t anything in the bag. 
2 There isn’t anybody in the office. 
3 I haven’t got anything to do. 
4 There isn’t anything on TV. 
5 There wasn’t anyone at home. 
6 We didn’t find anything.

78.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.
1 There’s nothing in the bag. 
2 There was nobody on the bus. 
3 I’ve got nothing to read. 
4 I’ve got no-one to help me. 
5 She heard nothing. 
6 We’ve got nothing for dinner.

78.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one or nothing.
1a What did you say? Nothing. 5a Who knows the answer?
2a Who saw you? Nobody. 6a What did you buy?
3a What do you want? 7a What happened?
4a Who did you meet? 
8a Who was late?

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything:
1b I didn’t say anything.
2b Nobody saw me.
3b I don’t
4b I
5b the answer.
6b
7b
8b

78.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

nobody / no-one / nothing or anybody / anyone / anything

1 That house is empty. Nobody lives there.
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can’t remember anything.
3 Be quiet! Don’t say...
4 I didn’t know about the meeting. told me.
5 ‘What did you have to eat?’ I wasn’t hungry.
6 I didn’t eat. I wasn’t hungry.
7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn’t with.
8 I’m afraid I can’t help you. There’s I can do.
9 I don’t know about car engines.
10 The museum is free. It doesn’t cost to go in.
11 I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was there.
12 The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn’t understand.
13 ‘What are you doing tonight?’ Why?’
14 Helen has gone away. knows where she is. She didn’t tell where she was going.
somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

**A**

**Somebody** (or **Someone**) has broken the window.

**Somebody**/**Someone** = a person, but we don’t know who

She has got **something** in her mouth.

**Something** = a thing, but we don’t know what

Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

**Somewhere** = in/to a place, but we don’t know where

---

**B**

**People** (-body or -one)

**Somebody** or **someone**

- There is **somebody** (or **someone**) at the door.
- Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door?
- There isn’t **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door.
- There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) at the door.

**-body and -one are the same:** **somebody = someone, nobody = no-one etc.**

**Things** (-thing)

**Something**

- Lucy said **something**, but I didn’t understand what she said.
- Are you doing **anything** at the weekend?
- I was angry, but I didn’t say **anything**.
- ‘What did you say?’ ‘**Nothing**.

**Anything**

- ‘What’s that letter?’ ‘**It's nothing important.**

**Nothing**

- ‘I’m staying here. I’m not going **anywhere**.

**Places** (-where)

**Somewhere**

- Ruth’s parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?
- I’m not going **anywhere**.
- I don’t like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

**Anything/anybody etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting etc.)**

- Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let’s go **somewhere different**.
- ‘What’s that letter?’ ‘**It’s nothing important.**

**Something/anybody etc. + to ...**

- I’m hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony hasn’t got **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

168
Exercises

79.1 Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

1. Lucy said ___________________.
2. I’ve lost ___________________.
3. Sue and Tom went ___________________.
4. I’m going to phone ___________________.

What did she say?
What have you lost?
Where did they go?
Who are you going to phone?

79.2 Write nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.

1a. What did you say?
2a. Where are you going?
3a. What do you want?
4a. Who are you looking for?

Nothing.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.

1b. I didn’t say anything.
2b. I’m not ___________________.
3b. ___________________.
4b. ___________________.

79.3 Write somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

1. It’s dark. I can’t see anything.
2. Tom lives somewhere near London.
3. Do you know about computers?
4. ‘Listen!’ ‘What? I can’t hear.’
5. ‘What are you doing here?’ ‘I’m waiting for.’
6. We need to talk. There’s I want to tell you.
7. ‘Did see the accident?’ ‘No.’
8. We weren’t hungry, so we didn’t eat.
9. ‘What’s going to happen?’ ‘I don’t know.’
10. ‘Do you know in Paris?’ ‘Yes, a few people.’
11. ‘What’s in that cupboard?’ ‘It’s empty.’
12. I’m looking for my glasses. I can’t find them.
13. I don’t like cold weather. I want to live warm.
14. Is there interesting on television tonight?
15. Have you ever met famous?

79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something anything nothing
dsomewhere anywhere nowhere
do eat park sit
drink go read stay

1. We don’t go out very much because there’s nowhere to go.
2. There isn’t any food in the house. We haven’t got .
3. I’m bored. I’ve got .
4. ‘Why are you standing?’ ‘Because there isn’t .’
5. ‘Would you like ?’ ‘Yes, please – a glass of water.’
6. If you’re going to the centre, take the bus. Don’t drive because there’s

7. I want . I’m going to buy a magazine.
8. I need in London. Can you recommend a hotel?
every and all

**A**

every

Every house in the street is the same.
every house in the street = all the houses in the street

We use every + singular noun (every house / every country etc.):

- Sarah has been to every country in Europe.
- Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different every time I see her.

Use a singular verb after every ... :

- Every house in the street is the same. (not are the same)
- Every country has a national flag. (not have)

Compare every and all:

- Every student in the class passed the exam.
- Every country has a national flag.
- All the students in the class passed the exam.
- All countries have a national flag.

**B**

every day and all day

every day = on all days:

- how often?

- It rained every day last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening. (= on all evenings)

- also every morning/night/summer etc.

all day = the complete day:

- how long?

- It rained all day yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV all evening. (= the complete evening)

- also all morning/night/summer etc.

**C**
everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or everyone (people)
everything (things)
everywhere (places)

- Everybody (or Everyone) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Have you got everything you need? (= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked everywhere for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a singular verb after everybody/everyone/everything:

- Everybody has problems. (not Everybody have)
80.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + these words:

day  room  student  time  word

1. Every student in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. is the same.
3. Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins .
4. in the hotel has satellite TV.
5. ‘Did you understand what she said?’ ‘Most of it, but not .’

80.2 Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

1. Yesterday it rained .
2. I buy a newspaper , but sometimes I don’t read it.
3. I’m not going out tomorrow. I’ll be at home .
4. I usually drink about four cups of coffee .
5. Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed .
6. I’m tired now because I’ve been working hard .
7. Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained .

80.3 Write every or all.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours .
2. Julia gets up at 6.30 .
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside .
4. I’m going away on Monday. I’ll be away .
5. ‘How often do you go skiing?’ ‘Usually in March.’
6. A: Were you at home at 10 o’clock yesterday?  
   B: Yes, I was at home .
7. My sister loves new cars. She buys one .
8. I saw Sam at the party, but he didn’t speak to me .
9. We go away on holiday for two or three weeks .

80.4 Write everybody/everything/everywhere.

1. Everybody needs friends.
2. Chris knows about computers.
3. I like the people here. is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It’s comfortable and .
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes by motorcycle.
6. Let’s get something to eat. is hungry.
7. Sue’s house is full of books. There are books .
8. You are right. you say is true.

80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

1. Everybody .
3. The house is empty. Everyone gone out.
4. Gary is very popular. Everybody him.
5. This town is completely different now. Everything changed.
6. I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone asleep.
7. Everybody mistakes!
8. A: everything clear? everybody know what to do?  
   B: Yes, we all understand.
all  most  some  any  no/none

Compare:

**children/money/books** etc. (in general):
- Children like playing. (= children in general)
- Money isn't everything. (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

**the children / the money / these books** etc.:
- Where are the children? (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I haven't got the money. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read these books?
- I often go out with my friends.

most / most of ..., some / some of ..., etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>any</td>
<td>no/none</td>
<td>not + any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**most/some etc. + noun**

- All cities have the same problems. (= cities in general)
- Most children like playing. (= children in general)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He's got no friends.

Do not use of in these sentences:
- Most people drive too fast. (not Most of people)
- Some birds can't fly. (not Some of birds)

**most of/some of etc. + the/this/my ... etc.**

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

You can say all the ... or all of the ... (with or without of):
- All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students ...)
- Silvia has lived in London all her life. (or ... all of her life.)

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You can have some of this cake, but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?  
  B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books, but I haven't read any of them.
- 'How many of these books have you read?' 'None of them.'

---

the ... (children / the children etc.) → Unit 72  
some and any → Unit 76  
no/none/any → Unit 77  
all and every → Unit 80
Exercises

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you need of (some of / most of etc.).

1. Most ______ children like playing. (most)
2. Some of ______ this money is yours. (some)
3. ______ people never stop talking. (some)
4. ______ the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (most)
5. You can change your money in ______ banks. (most)
6. I don’t like ______ the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He’s lost ______ his money. (all)
8. ______ my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know ______ the people in this photograph? (any)
10. ______ birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed ______ the film, but I didn’t like the ending. (most)
12. ______ sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can’t find anywhere to stay. ______ the hotels are full. (all)
14. You must have ______ this cheese. It’s delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained ______ the time. (most)

81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:
all/most/some/none + of them / of it

1. How many of the people are women? ______
2. How many of the boxes are on the table? ______
3. How many of the men are wearing hats? ______
4. How many of the windows are open? ______
5. How many of the people are standing? ______
6. How much of the money is Ben’s? ______

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Most of children like playing. ______
2. All the students failed the exam. ______
3. Some of people work too hard. ______
4. Some of questions in the exam were very easy. ______
5. I haven’t seen any of those people before. ______
6. All of insects have six legs. ______
7. Have you read all these books? ______
8. Most of students in our class are very nice. ______
9. Most of my friends are going to the party. ______
10. I’m very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. ______
We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people:

- Rebecca has two children. Both are married. (both = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have either. (either = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
  B: Neither. I want to stay at home. (neither = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare either and neither:

- ‘Would you like tea or coffee?’
  - Either. I don’t mind. (= tea or coffee)
  - I don’t want either. (= not I don’t want neither)
  - Neither. (= not tea or coffee)

Both/either/neither + noun

- Both + plural: both windows/books/children etc.
- Either + singular: either window/book/child etc.

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. Neither job was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

Both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...

- I like both of those pictures.

Neither of my parents is British.
I haven’t read either of these books.

You can say both of the/those/my ... or both the/those/my ... (with or without of):

- I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- Both of Paul’s sisters are married. or Both Paul’s sisters are married.

But Neither of Paul’s sisters is married. (not Neither Paul’s sisters)

Both of them / neither of us

- Paul has got two sisters. Both of them are married.
- Sue and I didn’t eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don’t know either of them.
82.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn’t like either of them.
3. It was a good football match. __________________ teams played well.
4. It wasn’t a good football match. __________________ team played well.
5. ‘Is your friend English or American?’ __________________. She’s Australian.’
6. We went away for two days, but the weather wasn’t good. It rained ___________ days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   B: __________________. It doesn’t matter which one.
8. I invited Donna and Mike to the party, but __________________ them came.
9. ‘Do you go to work by car or by bus?’ ‘_________________. I always walk.’
10. ‘Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?’ ‘I don’t like ___________ them.’
11. ‘Do you work or are you a student?’ ‘_________________. I work and I’m a student too.’
12. Paula and I didn’t know the time because ___________ us had a watch.
13. Helen has got two sisters and a brother. __________________ sisters are married.
14. Helen has got two sisters and a brother. I’ve met her brother, but I haven’t met __________________ her sisters.

82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither ... .

1. _______________ cups are empty. 4. _______________ beards.
2. _______________ are open. 5. _______________ to the airport.
3. _______________ wearing a hat. 6. _______________ right.

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them ... .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer Woman</th>
<th>Answer Man</th>
<th>Sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Neither of them is married. Both of them are a man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How old are you?</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Both of them are 21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you a student?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Both of them are students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Both of them have no car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like cooking?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Both of them like cooking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you play the piano?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Both of them cannot play the piano.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you read newspapers?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Both of them read newspapers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in sport?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Both of them are not interested in sport.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We use **much** + uncountable noun
(much food / much money etc.):

- Did you buy **much** food?
- We haven’t got **much** luggage.
- How **much money** do you want?
- A: Have you got any **money**?
  B: I’ve got some, but not **much**.

We use **many** + plural noun
(many books / many people etc.):

- Did you buy **many** books?
- We don’t know **many** people.
- How **many photos** did you take?
- A: Did you take any **photos**?
  B: I took some, but not **many**.

We use **a lot of** + both types of noun:

- We bought **a lot of food**.
- Paula hasn’t got **a lot of free time**.

We say:

- There **is** a lot of food/money/water … *(singular verb)*
- There **are** a lot of trees/shops/people … *(plural verb)*
- A lot of people **speak** English. *(not speaks)*

We use **much** in questions and negative sentences:

- Do you drink **much coffee**?
- I don’t drink **much coffee**.

But we do not often use **much** in positive sentences:

- I drink **a lot of coffee**. *(not* I drink much coffee)
- ‘Do you drink much coffee?’ ‘Yes, a **lot**.’ *(not* Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):

- We’ve got **many friends / a lot of friends**.
- We haven’t got **many friends / a lot of friends**.
- Have you got **many friends / a lot of friends**?

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:

- Donna spoke to me, but she didn’t say **much**.
- ‘Do you watch TV **much**?’ ‘No, not **much**.’ *(= not often)*
- We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**. *(not go to the cinema much)*
- I don’t like him very **much**.
Exercises

83.1 Write much or many.
1. Did you buy much food?
2. There aren’t many hotels in this town.
3. We haven’t got much petrol. We need to stop and get some.
4. Were there many people on the train?
5. Did many students fail the exam?
6. Paula hasn’t got any money.
7. I wasn’t hungry, so I didn’t eat much.
8. I don’t know where Gary lives these days. I haven’t seen him for many years.

Write How much or How many.
9. How many people are coming to the party?
10. How many litres of milk do you want in your coffee?
11. How much bread did you buy?
12. How many players are there in a football team?

83.2 Complete the sentences. Use much or many with these words:

books countries luggage people time times
1. I don’t read very much. I haven’t got many books.
2. Hurry up! We haven’t got much time.
3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to many countries?
4. Tina hasn’t lived here very long, so she doesn’t know many people.
5. ‘Have you got any luggage?’ ‘No, only this bag.’
6. I know Tokyo well. I’ve been there many times.

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use a lot of + these words:

accidents books fun interesting things traffic
1. I like reading. I have a lot of books.
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw many interesting things.
3. This road is very dangerous. There are many accidents.
4. We enjoyed our holiday. We had a lot of fun.
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was much traffic.

83.4 In some of these sentences much is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.

1. Do you drink much coffee? OK a lot of tea
2. I drink much tea.
3. It was a cold winter. We had much snow.
4. There wasn’t much snow last winter.
5. It costs much money to travel around the world.
6. We had a cheap holiday. It didn’t cost much.
7. Do you know much about computers?
8. ‘Have you got any luggage?’ ‘Yes, much.’

83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use much and a lot.

1. Jim loves films. (go to the cinema) He goes to the cinema a lot.
2. Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) She doesn’t watch TV much.
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She
4. Martin doesn’t like driving. (use his car) He
5. Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel)
(a) little  (a) few

(a) little + uncountable noun:
(a) little water
(a) little time
(a) little money
(a) little soup

(a) few + plural noun:
(a) few books
(a) few questions
(a) few people
(a) few days

a little water
a few books

a little = some but not much
☐ She didn’t eat anything, but she drank a little water.
☐ I speak a little Spanish.
(= some Spanish but not much)
☐ A: Can you speak Spanish?
        B: A little.

a few = some but not many
☐ Excuse me, I have to make a few phone calls.
☐ We’re going away for a few days.
☐ I speak a few words of Spanish.
☐ A: Are there any shops near here?
        B: Yes, a few.

little (without a) = nearly no or nearly nothing
☐ There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:
☐ Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

few (without a) = nearly no

Little (or very little) is a negative idea:
☐ They have little money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

few and a few

A few is a positive idea:
☐ I’ve got a few friends, so I’m not lonely. (= I’ve got some friends)

Few (or very few) is a negative idea:
☐ I’m sad and I’m lonely. I’ve got few friends. (= nearly no friends)
84.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.
1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a little.'
2 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes,'
3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, please.'
4 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' 'Yes,'
5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes,'
6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes,'

84.2 Write a little or a few + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chairs</th>
<th>days</th>
<th>fresh air</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>milk</th>
<th>Russian</th>
<th>times</th>
<th>years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 Martin speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years.
2 Can I have a little milk in my coffee, please?
3 'When did Julia go away?' She left about a year ago.
4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' I can speak Russian.
5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with a friend.'
6 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'Yes, three years ago.'
7 There wasn't much furniture in the room - just a table and a chair.
8 I'm going out for a walk. I need some fresh air.

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + these words:

coffee  hotels  mistakes  people  rain  time  work

1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2 I drink a lot of coffee. I don't like it.
3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is very little rain.
4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are very few hotels.
5 Hurry up. We've got very little time left.
6 The town is very quiet at night. There are very few people out.
7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do very little work.

84.4 Write little / a little or few / a few.

1 'There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.'
2 'When did Sarah go out?' 'At about 8 o'clock.'
3 I can't decide now. I need more time to think about it.
4 There was a lot of traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5 'The bus service isn't very good at night - there are very few buses after 9 o'clock.'
6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, please.'
7 I'd like to practise my English more, but I have a little opportunity.

84.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.

1 We're going away for a few days next week. for a few days
2 Everybody needs little luck.
3 I can't talk to you now - I've got few things to do.
4 I eat very little meat - I don't like it very much.
5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions?
6 There were little people on the bus - it was nearly empty.
7 Martin is a very private person. Few people know him well.
old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

**A**

**adjective + noun** (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

It's a **nice** day today.
Laura has got **brown** eyes.
There's a very **old** bridge in this village.
Do you like **Italian** food?
I don't speak any **foreign** languages.
There are some **beautiful** **yellow** flowers in the garden.

The adjective is **before** the noun:
- They live in a **modern** house. (not a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous** people? (not people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:
- a **different** place = **different** places (not **differents**)

**B**

**be** (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

- The weather is **nice** today.
- These flowers are very **beautiful**.
- Are you cold? Shall I close the window?
- I'm **hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn't very **good**. It was boring.
- Please be **quiet**. I'm reading.

**C**

**look/feel/smell/taste/sound** + adjective

- You look tired.
- You sound happy.
- It smells good.
- It tastes good.
- I feel tired.
- It was interesting.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He</th>
<th>feels tired</th>
<th>They</th>
<th>look happy</th>
<th>It</th>
<th>smells good</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>looks</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>sound</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>tastes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

get + adjective (get hungry/tired etc.) → **Unit 56**

something/anybody + adjective → **Unit 79**
85.1 Put the words in the right order.

1 (new / live in / house / they / a) \[\text{They live in a new house.}\]
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green) \[\text{I like this green jacket.}\]
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?) \[\text{Do you like classical music?}\]
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday) \[\text{I had a wonderful holiday.}\]
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) \[\text{We went to a Japanese restaurant.}\]

85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>clouds</th>
<th>foreign</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>languages</th>
<th>sharp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>knife</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Do you speak any \[\text{foreign languages}\]?
2 Look at those \[\text{dangerous animals}\]. It's going to rain.
3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a \[\text{long holiday}\].
4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no \[\text{fresh water}\].
5 Can you open the window? We need some \[\text{fresh air}\].
6 I need a \[\text{sharp knife}\] to cut these onions.
7 Fire-fighting is a \[\text{dangerous job}\].

85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

| feel(s) | look(s) | sound(s) | + | happy | ill | nice | horrible | new | surprised |
|---------|--------|---------|+|-------|-----|------|----------|-----|-----------|

1 You \[\text{sound happy}\].
2 It \[\text{is horrible}\].
3 I \[\text{feel surprised}\].
4 You \[\text{look tired}\].
5 They \[\text{look cold}\].
6 It \[\text{smells nice}\].

85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use feel/look etc.

A

1 You look tired.
2 This is a new coat.
3 I'm American.
4 You look cold.
5 These bags are heavy.
6 That soup looks good.

B

1 Do I? I \[\text{don't feel tired}\]. (feel)
2 Is it? It doesn't \[\text{look good}\]. (look)
3 Are you? You \[\text{sound American}\]. (sound)
4 Do I? I \[\text{feel tired}\]. (feel)
5 Are they? They \[\text{look cold}\]. (look)
6 Maybe, but it \[\text{taste good}\]. (taste)
quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

He ate his dinner very quickly. Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

*adjective* + -ly → *adverb*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>quick</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>sudden</th>
<th>careful</th>
<th>heavy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → easily heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

- The train **stopped suddenly**.
- I opened the door **slowly**.
- Please **listen carefully**.
- I understand you **perfectly**.

It’s **raining heavily**.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>Sue is very quiet.</th>
<th>Be careful!</th>
<th>It was a bad game.</th>
<th>I felt nervous. (= I was nervous)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>Sue speaks very quietly. <strong>(not speaks very quiet)</strong></td>
<td>Listen carefully! <strong>(not listen careful)</strong></td>
<td>Our team played badly. <strong>(not played bad)</strong></td>
<td>I waited nervously. <strong>(not waited nervous)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

hard fast late early

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

- Sue’s job is very **hard**.
- Ben is a **fast runner**.
- The bus was **late/early**.
- Sue works very **hard**. **(not hardly)**
- Ben can run **fast**.
- I went to bed **late/early**.

**good** (adjective) → **well** (adverb)

- Your English is very **good**.
- It was a **good game**.
- You speak English very **well**. **(not very good)**
- Our team played **well**.

But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not ill, in good health):

- ‘How are you?’ ‘I’m very **well**, thank you. And you?’

adjectives → Unit 85
86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>angrily</th>
<th>badly</th>
<th>dangerously</th>
<th>fast</th>
<th>heavily</th>
<th>quietly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It's raining __________________________. 4. She shouted at me __________________________.
2. He sings very __________________________. 5. She can run very __________________________.
3. They came in __________________________. 6. He was driving __________________________.

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come know sleep win
explain listen think work
carefully clearly hard well
carefully easily quickly well

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please __________________________.
2. They __________________________. At the end of the day they're always tired.
3. I'm tired this morning. I didn't __________________________ last night.
4. You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always __________________________.
5. __________________________ before you answer the question.
6. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't __________________________ her very __________________________.
7. Our teacher doesn't __________________________ things very __________________________. We never understand him.
8. Helen! I need your help. __________________________!

86.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so quick/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
2. Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
6. Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
7. "Where's Diane?" "She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.
8. Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10. Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
11. I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

86.4 Write good or well.

1. Your English is very __________________________. You speak it very __________________________.
2. Jackie did very __________________________ in her exams.
3. The party was very __________________________. I enjoyed it very much.
4. Martin has a difficult job, but he does it __________________________.
5. How are your parents? Are they __________________________?
6. Did you have a __________________________ holiday? Was the weather __________________________?
old/older   expensive / more expensive

Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms.
The comparative is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

older/heavier etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → -er:
old → older  slow → slower  cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer  late → later  big → bigger

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):  big → bigger  hot → hotter  thin → thinner

Words ending in -y → -ier:
easy → easier  heavy → heavier  early → earlier

☐ Rome is old, but Athens is older. (not more old)
☐ Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not more cheap)
☐ Helen wants a bigger car.
☐ This coat is OK, but I think the other one is nicer.
☐ Don’t take the bus. It’s easier to take a taxi. (not more easy)

far → further:
☐ ‘How far is it to the station? A mile?’ ‘No, it’s further. About two miles.’

more ...

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → more ...

careful → more careful  polite → more polite
expensive → more expensive  interesting → more interesting

☐ You must be more careful.
☐ I don’t like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
☐ Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

good/well → better   bad → worse

☐ The weather wasn’t very good yesterday, but it’s better today.
☐ ‘Do you feel better today?’ ‘No, I feel worse.’
☐ Which is worse – a headache or a toothache?

older than ... / more expensive than ... → Unit 88  the oldest / the most expensive → Unit 90
Exercises

87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).

1 heavy
2 big
3 slow
tortoise
4 expensive
5 high
6 dangerous

87.2 Write the comparative.

1 old _________________________ 6 good _________________________
2 strong ______________________ 7 large _________________________
3 happy ______________________ 8 serious ______________________
4 modern ______________________ 9 pretty ______________________
5 important ___________________ 10 crowded __________________

87.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger _____________________ 4 better ______________________
2 colder ______________________ 5 nearer ______________________
3 cheaper _____________________ 6 easier ______________________

87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1 Helen’s car isn’t very big. She wants a bigger one.
2 My job isn’t very interesting. I want to do something more interesting.
3 You’re not very tall. Your brother is ________________________.
4 David doesn’t work very hard. I work ________________________.
5 My chair isn’t very comfortable. Yours is ______________________.
6 Your idea isn’t very good. My idea is ________________________.
7 These flowers aren’t very nice. The blue ones are ____________________.
8 My bag isn’t very heavy. Your bag is ________________________.
9 I’m not very interested in art. I’m ________________________ in history.
10 It isn’t very warm today. It was ________________________ yesterday.
11 These tomatoes don’t taste very good. The other ones tasted ____________________.
12 Britain isn’t very big. France is ________________________.
13 London isn’t very beautiful. Paris is ________________________.
14 This knife isn’t very sharp. Have you got a ________________________ one?
15 People today aren’t very polite. In the past they were ____________________.
16 The weather isn’t too bad today. Often it is much ____________________.
older than ... more expensive than ...

She's taller than him. The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

We use than after comparatives (older than ... / more expensive than ... etc.):
- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It's easier to take a taxi than to take the bus.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

We usually say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them.
You can say:
- I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

more/less than ...
- A: How much did your shoes cost? £50?
  B: No, more than that. (= more than £50)
- The film was very short – less than an hour.
- They've got more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.

a bit older / much older etc.

Box A is a bit bigger than Box B. Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Sue is a bit older than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.

old → older, expensive → more expensive → Unit 87 not as ... as → Unit 89
Exercises

88.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

1 I'm 26.
2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
5 I don't work very hard.
6 I haven't got much money.
7 I'm a very good dancer.
8 I'm not very patient.
9 I'm not a very good driver.
10 I'm very intelligent.
11 I speak French very well.
12 I don't go to the cinema very much.

Liz

1 I'm 24.
2 I'm a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
4 I start work at 8.30.
5 I work very hard.
6 I've got a lot of money.
7 I'm not a very good driver.
8 I'm very patient.
9 I'm a good dancer.
10 I'm not very intelligent.
11 I don't speak French very well.
12 I go to the cinema a lot.

Ben

1 Liz is older than Ben
2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz
3 Liz is
4 Liz starts
5 Ben
6 Ben has got
7 Liz is a
8 Ben
9 Ben
10 Liz
11 Liz
12 Ben

88.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.

1 He isn't very tall. You're ______ taller than him (OR taller than he is)
2 She isn't very old. You're ______
3 I don't work very hard. You work ______
4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You ______
5 I'm not a very good cook. You ______
6 We don't know many people. You ______
7 They haven't got much money. You ______
8 I can't run very fast. You can ______
9 She hasn't been here very long. You ______
10 They didn't get up very early. You ______
11 He wasn't very surprised. You ______

88.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + comparative (older/better etc.).

1 Emma is 25. Gary is 24½.
   Emma ______

2 Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
   Jack's mother ______

3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.
   My camera ______

4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
   I feel ______

5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
   It's ______

6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.
   Sarah ______
not as ... as

She's old, but she's not as old as he is.  

Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older)
- The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (= the Europa is more expensive)
- I don't play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't as cold. (= as cold as it was yesterday)

not as much as ... / not as many as ...

- I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got more money)
- I don't know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
- I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

Compare not as ... as and than:

- Rome is not as old as Athens. 
  Athens is older than Rome. (not older as Rome)
- Tennis isn't as popular as football. 
  Football is more popular than tennis.
- I don't go out as much as you. 
  You go out more than me.

We usually say: as me / as him / as her etc.

You can say:
- She's not as old as him. or She's not as old as he is.
- You don't work as hard as me. or You don't work as hard as I do.

We say the same as ... :
- The weather today is the same as yesterday.
- My hair is the same colour as yours.
- I arrived at the same time as Tim.
Exercises

89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

1. A is bigger than C, but not as big as B.
2. A is B, but not C.
3. C is A, but.
4. A is , but
5. B has got
6. C works

89.2 Write sentences with as ... as ...

1. Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.
2. My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't.
3. You got up earlier than me. I didn't.
4. We played better than them. They.
5. I've been here longer than you. You.
6. She's more nervous than him. He.

89.3 Write as or than.

1. Athens is older Rome.
2. I don't watch TV as much you.
3. You eat more me.
4. I'm more tired today I was yesterday.
5. Joe isn't as intelligent he thinks.
6. Belgium is smaller Switzerland.
7. Brazil isn't as big Canada.
8. I can't wait longer an hour.

89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use the same age / the same street etc.

Julia
1 (age) I'm 22.
2 (street) I live in Hill Street.
3 (time) I got up at 7.15.
4 (colour) I haven't got a car.

Andy
1 (age) I'm 24.
2 (street) I live in Baker Street.
3 (time) I got up at 7.15.
4 (colour) My car is dark blue.

Laura
1 (age) I'm 24.
2 (street) I live in Hill Street.
3 (time) I got up at 7.45.
4 (colour) I've got a car. It's dark blue.

89.5 Write sentences using the same age / the same street etc.

1. Julia is the same age as Laura.
2. Julia lives
3. Julia got up
4. Andy's
the oldest  the most expensive

HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON
(Per room per night)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hotel</th>
<th>Price</th>
<th>Hotel</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europa</td>
<td>£140</td>
<td>Grosvenor</td>
<td>£100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand</td>
<td>£125</td>
<td>Bennets</td>
<td>£90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royal</td>
<td>£120</td>
<td>Carlton</td>
<td>£85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astoria</td>
<td>£115</td>
<td>Star</td>
<td>£75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palace</td>
<td>£110</td>
<td>Station</td>
<td>£75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the city.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the city.

**Bigger / older / more expensive** etc. are **comparative forms** (→ Unit 87).

**Biggest / oldest / most expensive** etc. are **superlative forms**.

The superlative form is -**est** (oldest) or **most** ... (most expensive).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.)</th>
<th>the -<strong>est</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>the oldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>the cheapest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>the nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>the best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>the worst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spelling (→ Appendix 5)</th>
<th>big</th>
<th>the biggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>the hottest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words ending in -<strong>y</strong> (easy/heavy etc.)</th>
<th>the -<strong>i</strong>est</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>the easiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>the heaviest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretty</td>
<td>the prettiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.)</th>
<th>the most ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>the most careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>the most interesting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We say **the oldest ... / the most expensive ...** etc. (with the):

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
  (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive** etc. without a noun:

- Ken is a good player, but he isn't **the best** in the team.
  (the best = the best player)

You can use **superlative + I've ever ... / you've ever ...** etc.:

- The film was very bad. I think it's **the worst** film I've ever seen.
- What is **the most unusual** thing you've ever done?
90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

big/small
\[(A/D) \text{ A is bigger than D.}\]
\[(A) \text{ A is the biggest.}\]
\[(B) \text{ B is the smallest.}\]

long/short
\[(C/A) \text{ C is } \underline{\text{A}}.\]
\[(D) \text{ D is } \underline{\text{A}}.\]
\[(B) \text{ B } \underline{\text{A}}.\]

young/old
\[(D/C) \text{ D } \underline{\text{C}}.\]
\[(B) \underline{\text{C}}.\]
\[(C) \underline{\text{C}}.\]

expensive/cheap
\[(D/A) \text{ D } \underline{\text{A}}.\]
\[(C) \underline{\text{A}}.\]
\[(A) \underline{\text{A}}.\]

good/bad
\[(A/C) \text{ A } \underline{\text{C}}.\]
\[(A) \underline{\text{C}}.\]
\[(D) \underline{\text{C}}.\]

90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

1. This building is very old. It’s \underline{\text{the oldest building}} in the town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was \underline{\text{of my life}}.
3. It’s a very good film. It’s \underline{\text{I’ve ever seen}}.
4. She’s a very popular singer. She’s \underline{\text{in the country}}.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was \underline{\text{I’ve ever made}}.
6. It’s a very pretty village. It’s \underline{\text{I’ve ever seen}}.
7. It was a very cold day. It was \underline{\text{of the year}}.
8. He’s a very boring person. He’s \underline{\text{I’ve ever met}}.

90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.). Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sydney</th>
<th>Alaska</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>country</th>
<th>Africa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Everest</td>
<td>the Nile</td>
<td>large</td>
<td>river</td>
<td>South America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>the USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>planet</td>
<td>the solar system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. \underline{\text{Sydney is the largest city in Australia.}}
2. Everest
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

191
enough

She isn’t going to take a taxi.
She hasn’t got enough money.

He can’t reach the shelf.
He isn’t tall enough.

enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)
- ‘Is there enough milk in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
- We wanted to play football, but we didn’t have enough players.
- Why don’t you buy a car? You’ve got enough money. (not money enough)

enough without a noun
- I’ve got some money, but not enough to buy a car.
  (= I need more money to buy a car)
- ‘Would you like some more to eat?’ ‘No, thanks. I’ve had enough.’
- You’re always at home. You don’t go out enough.

adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)
- ‘Shall we sit outside?’ ‘No, it isn’t warm enough.’ (not enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- Don’t buy that coat. It’s nice, but it isn’t long enough. (= it’s too short)

Remember:

enough + noun but adjective + enough

enough money tall enough
enough time good enough
enough people old enough

We say:

enough for somebody/something
- This pullover isn’t big enough for me.
- I haven’t got enough money for a new car.

enough to do something
- I haven’t got enough money to buy a new car. (not for buy)
- Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (not for have)

enough for somebody/something
to do something
- There aren’t enough chairs for everybody to sit down.
91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use enough + these words:

**chairs**  **-money**  **paint**  **wind**

1. She hasn’t got ___________________________.
2. There aren’t _____________________________.
3. She hasn’t got _____________________________.
4. There isn’t _____________________________.

91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + enough:

**big**  **long**  **strong**  **tall**

1. He ___________________________.
2. The ___________________________.
3. His legs aren’t ___________________________.
4. He ___________________________.

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

**big**  **eat**  **loud**  **milk**  **old**  **practise**  **space**  **time**  **tired**

1. ‘Is there ___________________________ in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it ___________________________ for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants – he’s ___________________________.
4. When I visited New York last year, I didn’t have ___________________________ to see all the things I wanted to see.
5. This house isn’t ___________________________ for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn’t ___________________________.
7. My office is very small. There isn’t ___________________________.
8. It’s late, but I don’t want to go to bed now. I’m not ___________________________.
9. Lisa isn’t a very good tennis player because she doesn’t ___________________________.

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

1. We haven’t got ___________________________ a new car.
2. This knife isn’t ___________________________ tomatoes.
3. The water wasn’t ___________________________ swimming.
4. Have we got ___________________________ sandwiches?
5. We played well, but not ___________________________ the game.
6. I don’t have ___________________________ newspapers.
too

His shoes are too big for him. There is too much sugar in it.

too + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard etc.)
- Can you turn the radio down? It's too loud. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm too tired.
- I think you work too hard.

too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:
- I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too many cars.

Compare too and not enough:
- The hat is too big for him.
- The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's too much sugar in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate too much.

too big

- The hat isn't big enough for him. (= it's too small)
- The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's not enough sugar in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
- You're very thin. You don't eat enough.

ton big enough

We say:

- too ... for somebody/something
- too ... to do something
- too ... for somebody to do something
- These shoes are too big for me.
- It's a small house - too small for a large family.
- I'm too tired to go out. (not for go out)
- It's too cold to sit outside.
- She speaks too fast for me to understand.
92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>big</th>
<th>crowded</th>
<th>fast</th>
<th>heavy</th>
<th>loud</th>
<th>low</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The music is _____________.
2 The box is _____________.
3 The net is _____________.
4 She's driving _____________.
5 The ball is _____________.
6 The museum is _____________.

92.2 Write too / too much / too many or enough.

1 You're always at home. You don't go out _____________.
2 I don't like the weather here. There's ____________ rain.
3 I can't wait for them. I haven't got ____________ time.
4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were ____________ people.
5 You're always tired. I think you work ____________ hard.
6 'Did you have ____________ to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
7 You drink ____________ coffee. It's not good for you.
8 You don't eat ____________ vegetables. You should eat more.
9 I don't like the weather here. It's ____________ cold.
10 Our team didn't play well. We made ____________ mistakes.
11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not ____________.'

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use too or enough with these words:

1 I couldn't work. I ____________ tired.
2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It ____________ loud enough.
3 I don't want to walk home. It's ____________.
4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It ____________.
5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It ____________ big.
6 I couldn't do the exercise. It ____________ difficult.
7 Your work needs to be better. It ____________ good.
8 I can't talk to you now. I ____________ busy.
9 I thought the film was boring. It ____________ long.

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use too (+ adjective) + to ...

1 (I'm not going out / cold) It's ____________ to go out.
2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's ____________.
3 (they're not getting married / young) They're ____________.
4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) It's ____________.
5 (don't phone Sue now / late) It's ____________.
6 (I didn't say anything / surprised) I was ____________.
He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

verb + object

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

subject verb object

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together. We say:

- Sue reads a newspaper every day. (not Sue reads every day a newspaper)

verb + object

He speaks English very well. (not He speaks very well English)
I like Italian food very much. (not I like very much …)
Did you watch television all evening? (not Did you watch all evening …)
Paul often wears a black hat. (not Paul wears often …)
We invited a lot of people to the party.
I opened the door slowly.
Why do you always make the same mistake?
I’m going to borrow some money from the bank.

where and when

We went to a party last night.

where? when?

Place (where?) is usually before time (when?). We say:

- We went to a party last night. (not We went last night to a party)

place (where?) + time (when? how long? how often?)

Lisa walks to work every day. (not … every day to work)
Will you be at home this evening? (not … this evening at home)
I usually go to bed early. (not … early to bed)
We arrived at the airport at 7 o’clock.
They’ve lived in the same house for 20 years.
Joe’s father has been in hospital since June.
Exercises

93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.
1 Did you watch all evening television? __________ Did you watch television all evening? Ok
2 Sue reads a newspaper every day.
3 I like very much this picture.
4 Tom started last week his new job.
5 I want to speak English fluently.
6 Jane bought for her friend a present.
7 I drink every day three cups of coffee.
8 Don’t eat your dinner too quickly!
9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds.

93.2 Put the words in order.
1 (the door / opened / I / slowly)
2 (a new computer / I / last week / bought)
3 (finished / Paul / quickly / his work)
4 (Emily / very well / French / doesn’t speak)
5 (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday)
6 (London / do you know / well?)
7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)
8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained)
9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met)
10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?)
11 (every day / do / the same thing / we)
12 (football / don’t like / very much / I)

93.3 Put the words in order.
1 (to work / every day / walks / Lisa)
2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived)
3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)
4 (we / since 1988 / here / have lived)
5 (in London / Sue / in 1980 / was born)
Sue
6 (didn’t go / yesterday / Paul / to work)
Paul
7 (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)
Helen
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
I
9 (in September / Barbara / to university / is going)
Barbara
10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)
I
11 (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)
My
12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
I
13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)
Are
14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
I
always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

These words (always/never etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- always
- often
- ever
- rarely
- also
- already
- all
- usually
- sometimes
- never
- seldom
- just
- still
- both

- My brother never speaks to me.
- She's always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- 'Don't forget to phone Laura.' 'I've already phoned her.'
- I've got three sisters. They're all married.

Always/never etc. are before the verb:

verb

always  go
often  play
never  have
etc.  etc.

- I always drink coffee in the morning.
  (not I drink always coffee)
- Helen often goes to London.
  (not Helen goes often)
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball.
  (not He plays also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They all live in London.

But always/never etc. are after am/is/are/was/were:

am  always
is  is
are  often
was  never
were  etc.

- I am always tired. (not I always am tired)
- They are never at home during the day.
- It is usually very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I was often late for school.
- 'Where's Laura?' 'She's still in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're both doctors.

Always/never etc. are between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

verb 1  verb 2

will  go
can always  find
do  remember
etc.  etc.
never  gone
always  been
often  etc.
never  etc.

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn't often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Egypt?
- A: Where's Laura?
  B: She's just gone out. (She's = She has)
- My friends have all gone to the cinema.
94.1 Read Paul’s answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with often/never etc.

1. Do you ever play tennis?
   Yes, often.
   Paul often plays tennis.

2. Do you get up early?
   Yes, always.
   He

3. Are you ever late for work?
   No, never.
   He

4. Do you ever get angry?
   Sometimes.
   He

5. Do you ever go swimming?
   Rarely.
   He

6. Are you at home in the evenings?
   Yes, usually.
   He

94.2 Write these sentences with never/always/usually etc.

1. My brother speaks to me. (never)
   My brother never speaks to me.

2. Susan is polite. (always)
   Susan

3. I finish work at 5 o’clock. (usually)
   I

4. Sarah has started a new job. (just)
   Sarah

5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely)

6. The bus isn’t late. (usually)

7. I don’t eat fish. (often)

8. I will forget what you said. (never)

9. Have you lost your passport? (ever)

10. Do you work in the same place? (still)

11. They stay in the same hotel. (always)

12. Jane doesn’t work on Saturdays. (usually)

13. Is Tina here? (already)

14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually)

15. I can remember his name. (never)

94.3 Write sentences with also.

1. Do you play football? (tennis)
   Yes, and I also play tennis.

2. Do you speak Italian? (French)
   Yes, and I

3. Are you tired? (hungry)
   Yes, and I

4. Have you been to England? (Ireland)
   Yes,

5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books)

94.4 Write sentences with both and all.

1. They both live in London.
   They

2. They married.
   They

   England.
still

an hour ago

The rain hasn’t stopped

An hour ago it was raining.

now

It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

❑ I had a lot to eat, but I’m still hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I’m hungry now)
❑ ‘Did you sell your car?’ ‘No, I’ve still got it.’
❑ ‘Do you still live in Barcelona?’ ‘No, I live in Madrid now.’

yet

20 minutes ago Bill will be here soon.

They are still waiting for Bill.

now Where’s Bill? He’s very late.

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

yet = until now

We use yet in negative sentences (He hasn’t come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?).

Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:

❑ A: Where’s Emma?
  B: She isn’t here yet. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn’t come)
❑ A: What are you doing this evening?
  B: I don’t know yet. (= I will know later, but I don’t know at the moment)
❑ A: Are you ready to go yet?
  B: Not yet. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I’m not ready at the moment)
❑ A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
  B: No, I’m still reading it.

Compare yet and still:

❑ She hasn’t gone yet. = She’s still here. (not she is yet here)
❑ I haven’t finished eating yet. = I’m still eating.

already = earlier than expected:

❑ ‘What time is Joe coming?’ ‘He’s already here.’ (= earlier than we expected)
❑ ‘I’m going to tell you what happened.’ ‘That’s not necessary. I already know.’
❑ Sarah isn’t coming to the cinema with us. She has already seen the film.

already/yet + present perfect → Unit 16  word order (still/already) → Unit 94
Exercises

95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

1. Do you still play the piano?
2. Do you ____________________________.
3. Are ____________________________.
4. ____________________________.
5. ____________________________.
6. I want to be a teacher.

Tina — two years ago

1. I play the piano.
2. I live in Clare Street.
3. I'm a student.
4. I've got a motorbike.
5. I go to the cinema a lot.

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

1. (before) They were waiting for the bus.
   (still) They are still waiting.
   (yet) The bus hasn't come yet.

2. (before) He was ____________________________.
   (still) He ____________________________.
   (yet) He hasn't come yet.

3. (before) She ____________________________ asleep.
   (still) She ____________________________ asleep.
   (yet) She isn't asleep yet.

4. (before) They ____________________________ dinner.
   (still) They ____________________________ dinner.
   (yet) They haven't eaten yet.

95.3 Write questions with yet.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: ____________________________.

2. You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: ____________________________ Helen ____________________________.

3. Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: ____________________________ you ____________________________.

4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him: ____________________________.

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use already.

1. What time is Joe coming?
   He's already ____________________________ here.
   No, she ____________________________ it.
   It's too late. She ____________________________ one.
   No, it's OK. I ____________________________.
   No, he ____________________________ I told him.

2. Does Sarah want to see the film?
   ____________________________ already seen it.

3. I have to see Julia before she goes.
   ____________________________ already went.

4. Do you need a pen?
   ____________________________ need a pen.

5. Shall I pay the bill?
   ____________________________ already paid the bill.

6. Shall I tell Paul about the meeting?
   ____________________________ already told him.
After these verbs (give/lend etc.), there are two possible structures:

**give something to somebody**
- I gave the keys to Sarah.

**give somebody something**
- I gave Sarah the keys.

### give something to somebody

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>something</th>
<th>to somebody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>That’s my book.</td>
<td><strong>Give</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These are Sue’s keys. Can you give them?</td>
<td><strong>give</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you give these flowers to your mother?</td>
<td><strong>I lent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you send a postcard to Kate?</td>
<td><strong>sent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’ve seen these photos. You showed them.</td>
<td><strong>showed</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### give somebody something

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom <strong>gave</strong> his mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I <strong>lent</strong> Joe some money.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much money did you lend him?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I <strong>sent</strong> you an email. Did you get it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicole <strong>showed</strong> us her holiday photos.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you <strong>pass</strong> me the salt, please?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say ‘buy/get somebody something’:

- I **bought** my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)
- Can you **get** me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)

You can say:

- I **gave** the keys to Sarah.
- and I **gave** Sarah the keys.

  (but not I gave to Sarah the keys)

- That’s my book. Can you **give it to me**?
- and Can you **give me** that book?

  (but not Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) with it or them:

- I gave **it to her**. (not I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (not Give your father them)
96.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.

Write sentences beginning He gave ... .

1. What did Mark do with the armchair? He gave it to his brother.
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave it to Sarah.
3. What happened to the books? He gave them to Robert.
4. What about the lamp? He gave it to Gary.
5. What did he do with the pictures? He gave it to his sister.
6. And the ladder? He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1. I gave Paul a book.
2. I gave
3.
4.
5.
6.

96.3 Write questions beginning Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ? etc.

1. (you want the salt) (pass) Can you pass me the salt?
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you lend me an umbrella?
3. (you want my address) (give) Can you give me your address?
4. (you need twenty pounds) (lend) Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5. (you want some information) (send) Can you send me some information?
6. (you want to see the letter) (show) Can you show me the letter?
7. (you want some stamps) (get) Can you get me some stamps?

96.4 Which is right?

1. I gave to Sarah the keys. / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys is right)
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.
and  but  or  so  because

We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

\[
\text{sentence A} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{The car stopped.} \\
\text{The driver got out.}
\end{array} \quad \text{sentence B} \\
\text{The car stopped and the driver got out.}
\]

and/or

\[
\text{sentence A} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{We stayed at home and (we)* watched television.} \\
\text{My sister is married and (she)* lives in London.} \\
\text{He doesn't like her, and she doesn't like him.} \\
\text{I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.} \\
\text{It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.} \\
\text{Do you want to go out, or are you too tired?}
\end{array}
\]

* It is not necessary to repeat ‘we’ and ‘she’.

In lists, we use commas (,). We use and before the last thing:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\checkmark \text{ I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell asleep.} \\
\checkmark \text{ Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.}
\end{array}
\]

so (the result of something)

\[
\text{sentence A} \quad \text{sentence B}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{It was very hot, so I opened the window.} \\
\text{Joe does a lot of sport, so he’s very fit.} \\
\text{They don’t like travelling, so they haven’t been to many places.}
\end{array}
\]

because (the reason for something)

\[
\text{sentence A} \quad \text{sentence B}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I opened the window because it was very hot.} \\
\text{Joe can’t come to the party because he’s going away.} \\
\text{Lisa is hungry because she didn’t have breakfast.}
\end{array}
\]

Because is also possible at the beginning:

\[
\checkmark \text{ Because it was very hot, I opened the window.}
\]

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\checkmark \text{ It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.} \\
\checkmark \text{ I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn’t like to live there because it’s too big.}
\end{array}
\]
97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use and/but/or.

I stayed at home.
I bought a newspaper.
I went to the window.
I wanted to phone you.
I jumped into the river.
I usually drive to work.
Do you want me to come with you?

I didn’t have your number.
Shall I wait here?
I didn’t read it.
I went by bus this morning.
I watched television.
I swam to the other side.
I looked out.

1 I stayed at home and watched television.
2 I bought a newspaper, but I didn’t read it.
3
4
5
6
7

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use and/but/so/because.

1 It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2 They couldn’t play tennis.
3 They went to the museum.
4 Bill wasn’t hungry.
5 Helen was late.
6 Sue said.

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use and/but etc.

1 (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2 (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3 (but)
4 (and)
5 (so)
6 (because)
When ... 

**When I went out, it was raining.**

This sentence has two parts: 
- *when I went out* + *it was raining*

You can say:
- **When I went out**, it was raining.  
  *It was raining* when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if **When ...** is at the beginning:
- **When** you're tired, don't drive.
  *Don't drive* when you're tired.

- **When** Helen got married, she was 25.

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:
- **Before** you cross the road, always look both ways.
- **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  *It began to rain* while I was waiting for the bus.

- **After** he broke his leg, he never played football again.

---

**When I am ... / When I go ... etc.**

Next week Sarah is going to New York. 
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York, 
but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico. 
So they won’t see each other in New York.

Lisa will be in Mexico **when** Sarah is in New York.

The time is **future** (next week) but we say: 
  ... **when** Sarah is in New York. 
  (*not when Sarah will be*)

We use the **present** (*I am / I go* etc.) with a **future meaning after when**:
- **When** I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower. 
  (*not When I will get home*)

- I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later **when** I have more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:
- Please close the window **before** you go out. (*not before you will go*)

- Rachel is going to stay in our flat **while** we are away. (*not while we will be*)

- I’ll wait here **until** you come back. (*not until you will come back*)
98.1 Write sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When +</th>
<th>+ went out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired</td>
<td>I turned off the TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I phoned her</td>
<td>I always go to the same place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go on holiday</td>
<td>there were no rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the programme ended</td>
<td>it was raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got to the hotel</td>
<td>there was no answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I like to watch TV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When I went out, it was raining.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

98.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>somebody broke into the house</th>
<th>before they crossed the road</th>
<th>before they came here</th>
<th>when they heard the news</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>before they crossed the road</td>
<td>before they came here</td>
<td>when they heard the news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after they got married</td>
<td>after they got married</td>
<td>after they got married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after their house was broken</td>
<td>after their house was broken</td>
<td>after their house was broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>after they went to live in New Zealand</td>
<td>after they went to live in New Zealand</td>
<td>after they went to live in New Zealand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
2. They were very surprised.
3. After they got married,
4. Their house was damaged in a storm.
5. Where did they live?
6. While they were away,
7. When I told them what happened,

98.3 Which is right?

1. I stay / I'll stay here until you come / you'll come back. (I'll stay and you come are right)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9. 'I need your address.' ‘OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.’
10. I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

98.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before you go out?
2. What are you going to do when
3. When I have enough money,
4. I'll wait for you while
5. When I start my new job,
6. Will you be here when
If we go ...  If you see ...  etc.

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry, have something to eat.
If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

If in the middle

It will be cheaper if we go by bus.
You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

- 'Are you going to the concert?'  'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After if, we use the present (not will). We say 'if you see ...' (not if you will see):

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not if I will be)
- What shall we do if it rains? (not if it will rain)
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. If I go out, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the windows.

Compare when and if:

- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not When I'm late)
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. (not when it doesn't rain)
Exercises

99.1 Write sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

If +
- you don’t hurry
- you pass the exam
- you fail the exam
- you don’t want this magazine
- you want those pictures
- you’re busy now
- you’re hungry
- you need money

If +
- we can have lunch now
- you can have them
- I can lend you some
- you’ll get a certificate
- you’ll be late
- I’ll throw it away
- we can talk later
- you can do it again

1. If you don’t hurry, you’ll be late.
2. If you pass
3. If
4. If
5. If
6. If
7. If
8. If

99.2 Which is right?

1. If I’m / I’ll be late this evening, don’t wait for me. (I’m is right)
2. Will you call me if I give / I’ll give you my phone number?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don’t see you tomorrow morning, I call / I’ll call you in the evening.
5. I’m / I’ll be surprised if Martin and Jane get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they’ll invite you?

99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2. If you don’t hurry, you’ll miss the train.
3. I don’t want to disturb you if
4. If you go to bed early tonight,
5. Turn the television off if
6. Tina won’t pass her exams if
7. If I have time tomorrow,
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if
9. I’ll be surprised if

99.4 Write if or when.

1. If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me.
2. I’m going to do some shopping now. I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I’m thinking of going to see Tim. I go, will you come with me?
4. you don’t want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Is it OK I close the window?
6. John is still at school. he leaves school, he wants to go to college.
7. Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good?
8. We’re going to Madrid next week. We haven’t got anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hotel we get there. I don’t know what we’ll do we don’t find a room.
If I had ... If we went ... etc.

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn’t have one. He doesn’t have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would** buy a fast car.

Usually **had** is past, but in this sentence **had** is not past. If he **had** the money = if he had the money now (but he doesn’t have it).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you it they etc.</th>
<th>I had / knew / lived / went (etc.) ...</th>
<th>I would(n’t) buy ... be ... have ... go ... etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>didn’t have / didn’t know (etc.) ...</td>
<td>were ...</td>
<td>could(n’t) etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say:

- **If he had** the money, he would buy a car.
  or He would buy a car if he **had** the money.

I’d / she’d / they’d etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would** etc.:

- I don’t know the answer. **If I knew** the answer, I’d **tell** you.
- It’s raining, so we’re not going out. **We’d get** wet if we **went** out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn’t be** happy if she **lived** in the country.
- **If you didn’t have** a job, what **would** you do? (but you **have** a job)
- I’m sorry I can’t help you. I’d **help** you if I **could**. (but I can’t)
- **If we had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we **haven’t** got a car, so we **can’t travel much**)

If (I) was/were ...

You can say ‘**if I/he/she/it was**’ or ‘**if I/he/she/it were**’:

- It’s not a very nice place. I wouldn’t go there if **I were you**. (or ... **if I was** you)
- It would be nice **if the weather was** better. (or ... **if the weather were** better)
- What would Tom do if **he were** here? (or ... **if he was** here)

Compare:

- **if I have** / **if it is** etc.
- **I must go and see Helen.**
  
  If **I have** time, I **will go** today. 
  (= maybe I’ll have time, so maybe I’ll go)
- **I like that jacket.**
  **I’ll buy it if it isn’t** too expensive. 
  (= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- **I’ll help you if I can.** (= maybe I can help)

- **if I had** / **if it was** etc.
- **I must go and see Helen.**
  
  If **I had** time, I **would go** today. 
  (= I don’t have time today, so I will not go)
- **I like that jacket, but it’s very expensive.**
  I’d **buy it if it wasn’t** so expensive. 
  (= it is expensive, so I’m not going to buy it)
- **I’d help you if I could,** but I can’t.
100.1 Complete the sentences.

1 I don’t know the answer. If I ___ knew ___ the answer, I’d tell you.
2 I have a car. I couldn’t travel very much if I ___ didn’t have ___ a car.
3 I don’t want to go out. If I ___ went ___ to go out, I’d go.
4 We haven’t got a key. If we ___ had ___ a key, we could get into the house.
5 I’m not hungry. I would have something to eat if I ___ ate ___ hungry.
6 Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn’t do it if she ___ didn’t enjoy ___ it.
7 He can’t speak any foreign languages. If he ___ couldn’t speak ___ a foreign language, perhaps he would get a better job.
8 You don’t try hard enough. If you ___ tried ___ harder, you would have more success.
9 I have a lot to do today. If I ___ had ___ so much to do, we could go out.

100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1 If ___ had ___ the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2 Jane likes living in a city. ___ She wouldn’t be ___ happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
3 If I wanted to learn Italian, ___ I __________ ___ to Italy. (I/go)
4 I haven’t told Helen what happened. She’d be angry if ___ knew ___ . (she/know)
5 If ___ has ___ a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
6 What would you do if ___ won ___ a lot of money? (you/win)
7 It’s not a very good hotel. ___ there ___ if I were you. (I/not/stay)
8 If ___ were ___ nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9 It’s a pity you have to go now. ___ it ___ nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10 I’m not going to take the job. I’d take it if ___ you ___ better.
   (the salary/be)
11 I don’t know anything about cars. If the car broke down, ___ you ___ what to do. (I/not/know)
12 If you could change one thing in the world, what ___ you ___ ?
   (you/change)

100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house
we (buy) a bigger house
we (have) some pictures on the wall
it (be) a bit cheaper
every day (be) the same
the air (be) cleaner
I (watch) it
I (be) bored

1 I’d buy that jacket if ___ it ___ was ___ a bit cheaper.
2 If there was a good film on TV tonight,
3 This room would be nicer if
4 If there wasn’t so much traffic,
5 Life would be boring if
6 If I had nothing to do,
7 We could invite all our friends to stay if
8 If we had more money,

100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1 I’d be happier if ___ I could ___ get ___ a better job.
2 If I could go anywhere in the world,
3 I wouldn’t be very happy if
4 I’d buy ___ if
5 If I saw an accident in the street,
6 The world would be a better place if
a person who ... a thing that/which ...
(relative clauses 1)

I can speak six languages.

I met a woman. She can speak six languages.

- 2 sentences

she → who

I met a woman who can speak six languages.

Jack was wearing a hat. It was too big for him.

- 2 sentences

it → that or which

Jack was wearing a hat that was too big for him.

or

Jack was wearing a hat which was too big for him.

who is for people (not things):

| A thief is a person | who steals things. |  |
| Do you know anybody | who can play the piano? |  |
| The man | who phoned | didn't give his name. |
| The people | who work in the office | are very friendly. |

that is for things or people:

| An aeroplane is a machine | that flies. |  |
| Emma lives in a house | that is 400 years old. |  |
| The people | that work in the office | are very friendly. |

You can use that for people, but who is more usual.

which is for things (not people):

| An aeroplane is a machine | which flies. (not a machine who ...) |  |
| Emma lives in a house | which is 400 years old. |  |

Do not use which for people:

Do you remember the woman who was playing the piano at the party?

(not the woman which ...)
Exercises

101.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A ... is a person who ... . Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a thief</th>
<th>a dentist</th>
<th>doesn't tell the truth</th>
<th>is ill in hospital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a butcher</td>
<td>a fool</td>
<td>takes care of your teeth</td>
<td>steals things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a musician</td>
<td>a genius</td>
<td>is very intelligent</td>
<td>does stupid things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a patient</td>
<td>a liar</td>
<td>plays a musical instrument</td>
<td>sells meat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A thief is a person who steals things.
2. A butcher is a person
3. A musician
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

101.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn’t give his name.)
   The man who phoned didn’t give his name.

2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman wore a yellow dress.

3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students passed.

4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn’t very friendly.)
   The policeman was not friendly.

101.3 Write who or which.

1. I met a woman who can speak six languages.
2. What’s the name of the man who has just started work in your office?
3. What’s the name of the river which flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture which was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody who wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions which are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend who is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody who went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9. Why does he always wear clothes which are too small for him?

101.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person who steals things.
2. An aeroplane is a machine that flies.
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table?
5. I don’t like people who never stop talking.
6. I know somebody that can help you.
7. I know somebody who works in that shop.
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong.
9. My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000.
the people we met
the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

The man is carrying a bag. It's very heavy. 2 sentences

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy. 1 sentence

Kate won some money. What is she going to do with it? 2 sentences

What is Kate going to do with the money (that) she won? 1 sentence

You can say:

☐ The bag that he is carrying ... or The bag he is carrying ... (with or without that)
☐ ... the money that Kate won? or ... the money Kate won?

You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The man</td>
<td>was carrying</td>
<td>a bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>some money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>some books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>some people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
→ the money (that) Kate won
→ the books (that) you wanted
→ the people (who) we met

☐ Did you find the books you wanted? (or ... the books that you wanted?)
☐ The people we met were very friendly. (or The people who we met ...)
☐ Everything I said was true. (or Everything that I said ...)

We say:

☐ The film we saw was very good. (not The film we saw it was ...)

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Eve is talking to a man. → Do you know the man Eve is talking to?
We stayed at a hotel. → The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
I told you about some books. → These are the books I told you about.

We say:

... the books I told you about. (not the books I told you about them)

You can say "(a place) where ...":

☐ The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject (→ Unit 101):

☐ I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who is the subject)
☐ Jack was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that is the subject)

a person who ..., a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1) → Unit 101
Exercises

102.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Helen took some photographs. Have you seen them?)
   Have you seen the photographs Helen took?

2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
   I've lost the

3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the

4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the

5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
   I

6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.

2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The

3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
   The shoes

4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
   The

102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
   What's the name of the hotel you stayed at

2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
   Who are the people

3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
   Did you find the

4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
   Where is the

5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:
   What's the name of

6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
   What's that

7 Your friend was waiting for a letter. You ask:
   Did you get

102.4 Complete the questions. Use where.

1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
   Did you like the hotel where you stayed?

2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
   What's the name of the restaurant

3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
   How big is the

4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   Where exactly is
at 8 o’clock  on Monday  in April

We say:

at the weekend
at night
at Christmas / at Easter
at the end of ...

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

but

We do not use at/on/in before:

this … (this morning / this week etc.)
last … (last August / last week etc.)
next … (next Monday / next week etc.)
every … (every day / every week etc.)

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.

We say:

at 8 o’clock
10.30
midnight etc.

on

Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc.
25 April / 6 June etc.
New Year’s Day etc.

in

April / June etc.
2003 / 1968 etc.
summer / spring etc.

I start work at 8 o’clock.
The shops close at 5.30.

Bye! I’ll see you on Friday.
What do you usually do on Sundays?
The concert is on 22 November.

I’m going on holiday in October.
Emma was born in 1983.
The park is beautiful in spring.

Are you going away at the weekend?
I can’t sleep at night.
Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
I’m going on holiday at the end of October.
Are you busy at the moment?

I’m meeting Joanne on Monday morning.
Are you doing anything on Saturday night?

We do not use at/on/in before:

this … (this morning / this week etc.)
last … (last August / last week etc.)
next … (next Monday / next week etc.)
every … (every day / every week etc.)

Are you going out this evening?
We go on holiday every summer. Last summer we went to Canada.
I’m leaving next Monday.
(not on next Monday)

Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes.
(= it leaves five minutes from now)
Bye! I’ll see you in a few days.
(= a few days from now)
Exercises

103.1 Write at/on/in.

1 on 6 June 7 24 September 13 Friday morning
2 in the evening 8 Thursday 14 Saturday night
3 half past two 9 11.45 15 night
4 Wednesday 10 Christmas Day 16 the end of the day
5 1997 11 Christmas 17 the weekend
6 September 12 the morning 18 winter

103.2 Write at/on/in.

1 Bye! See you on Friday.
2 Where were you on 28 February?
3 I got up at 8 o'clock this morning.
4 I like getting up early on the morning.
5 My sister got married in May.
6 Diane and I first met in 1991.
7 Did you go out on Tuesday?
8 Did you go out on Tuesday evening?
9 Do you often go out on the evening?
10 Let's meet tomorrow evening.
11 I often go away on the weekend.
12 I'm starting my new job on 3 July.
13 We often go to the beach in summer.
14 George isn't here at the moment.
15 Jane's birthday is in December.
16 Do you work on Saturdays?
17 The company started in 1989.
18 I like to look at the stars on the night.
19 I'll send you the money at the end of the month.

103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.

- Monday
  - Meet Sam at 2.30
  - Drive lesson 4 o'clock
- Tuesday
  - Cinema (evening)
- Wednesday
  - Phone Chris
- Thursday
  - 5 o'clock
- Friday
  - Party (evening)
- Saturday
  - Party (evening)
- Sunday

1 Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening.
2 She has phone Chris.
3 She isn't doing anything special.
4 She's got a driving lesson.
5 She's going to a party.
6 She's meeting Sam.

103.4 Write sentences with in ...

1 It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30.
2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.
3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.
4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.

The train leaves in five minutes.

1 It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30.
2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.
3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.
4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.

The train leaves in five minutes.

103.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 I'm going on Friday.
2 I'm going next Friday. (already complete)
3 I always feel tired the evening.
4 Will you be at home this evening?
5 We went to France last summer.
6 Laura was born 1990.
7 What are you doing the weekend?
8 I phone Robert every Sunday.
9 Shall we play tennis next Sunday?
10 I can't go to the party Sunday.
11 I'm going out. I'll be back an hour.
12 I don't often go out night.
from ... to until since for

from ... to ...

- We lived in Japan from 1992 to 2001.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from ... until ...

- We lived in Japan from 1992 until 2001.

until ...

- They’re going away tomorrow. They’ll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn’t tired. I read a book until 3 o’clock.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say till (= until):

- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:

- ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘Until Monday.’
- ‘When are you coming back?’ ‘On Monday.’

since + a time in the past (to now)

We use since after the present perfect (have been / have done etc.):

- Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married since 1968. (= from 1968 to now)
- It has been raining since I arrived.

Compare:

- We lived in Japan from 1992 to 2001.
- We lived in Japan until 2001.
- Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada in 2001.
- We have lived in Canada since 2001. (= from 2001 until now)

We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.):

- Joe has been in hospital for three days. (not since three days)

for + a period of time

- Gary stayed with us for three days.
- I’m going away for a few weeks.
- I’m going away for the weekend.
- They’ve been married for ten years.

present perfect + for/since → Units 18–19  present perfect (I have lived) and past simple (I lived) → Unit 20
104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use from ... to / until / since.

**ALEX**
- I live in England now.
- I lived in Canada before.
- I came to England in 1999.

**KAREN**
- I live in Switzerland now.
- I lived in France before.
- I came to Switzerland in 2003.

**CLARE**
- I work in a restaurant now.
- I worked in a hotel before.
- I started work in the restaurant in 2001.

**ADAM**
- I'm a journalist now.
- I was a teacher before.
- I started work as a journalist in 1998.

2 (Alex / Canada / → 1999) Alex lived in Canada 1999.
3 (Alex / England / 1999 →) Alex has lived in England.
5 (Karen / Switzerland / 2003 →) Karen has lived in Switzerland.
7 (Clare / a restaurant / 2001 →) Clare has worked at a restaurant since 2001.
9 (Adam / a journalist / 1998 →) Adam has been a journalist since 1998.

Now write sentences with for.

10 (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
11 (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England for ten years.
12 (Karen / Switzerland) Karen has lived in Switzerland for five years.
13 (Clare / a hotel) Clare worked as a hotel manager for two years.
14 (Clare / a restaurant) Clare has worked at a restaurant for three years.
15 (Adam / a teacher) Adam has been a teacher for ten years.
16 (Adam / a journalist) Adam has been a journalist for ten years.

104.2 Write until/since/for.

1 Sue and Dave have been married since 1968.
2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed until 10 o'clock.
3 We waited for Sue for half an hour, but she didn't come.
4 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here since half past seven.'
5 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' 'Since midnight.'
6 Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other for ten years.
7 I'm tired. I'm going to lie down for a few minutes.
8 Don't open the door of the train until the train stops.
9 This is my house. I've lived here since I was seven years old.
10 Jack has gone away. He'll be away until Wednesday.
11 Next week I'm going to Paris until three days.
12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work until six.
13 'How long have you known Anna?' 'Since we were at school together.'
14 Where have you been? I've been waiting for you for twenty minutes.
before, during and after

- Everybody feels nervous before exams.
- I fell asleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.

before, while and after

- Don't forget to close the window before you go out.
- I often fall asleep while I'm reading.
- They went home after they did the shopping.

during, while and for

We use during + noun (during the film). We use while + verb (while I'm reading):
- We didn't speak during the meal.
  but We didn't speak while we were eating. (not during we were eating)

Use for (not during) + a period of time (three days / two hours / a year etc.):
- We played tennis for two hours. (not during two hours)
- I lived in London for a year. (not during a year)

You can use before/after + -ing (before going / after eating etc.):
- I always have breakfast before going to work. (= before I go to work)
- After doing the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

Remember we say before going (not before to go), after doing (not after to do) etc.:
- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (not before to eat)
- I started work after reading the newspaper. (not after to read)
Exercises

105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

| after | during | + | lunch | the end | they went to Australia |
|-------|--------|+|the concert |the exam |you're waiting |
| before | while  |   | the course | the night |

1. Everybody was nervous ___________ the exam.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours ___________.
3. The film was really boring. We left ___________.
4. Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot ___________.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London ___________.
6. A: Somebody broke a window ___________. Did you hear anything?
   B: No, I was asleep all the time.
7. ‘Would you like to sit down ___________?’ ‘Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.’

105.2 Write during/while/for.

1. We didn’t speak ___________ we were eating.
2. We didn’t speak ___________ the meal.
3. Gary called ___________ you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome ___________ five days.
5. Sally didn’t read any newspapers ___________ she was on holiday.
6. The students looked very bored ___________ the lesson.
7. I fell out of bed ___________ I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV ___________ three hours.
9. I don’t usually watch TV ___________ the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV ___________ you are having dinner?

105.3 Complete the sentences. Use -ing (doing, having etc.).

1. After ___________ the shopping, they went home.
2. I felt sick after ___________ too much chocolate.
3. I’m going to ask you a question. Think carefully before ___________ it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after ___________ a shower.
5. After ___________ my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before ___________ to a foreign country, you should try and learn a little of the language.

105.4 Write sentences with before + -ing and after + -ing.

1. They did the shopping. Then they went home.
   After ___________ the shopping, they went home.
2. John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
   John worked ___________.
3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
   Before ___________.
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   After ___________.
5. Let’s have a cup of coffee. Then we’ll go out.
   Let’s ___________.
Unit 106
in at on (places 1)

A

in
- in a room
- in a shop
- in a car
- in the water
- in a garden
- in a town
- in the city centre
- in Brazil

- 'Where's David?' 'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Rachel works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy. Naples is in the south.
- I live in a big city, but I'd like to live in the country.

B

at
- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the traffic lights
- at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Jane is working at her desk.

at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...):
- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the street.

at the top (of the page)
at the bottom (of the page)

C

on
- on a shelf
- on a plate
- on a balcony
- on the floor
- etc.

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.

on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling
etc.

- on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorbike:
- Who is that man on the motorbike?
106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1 Where is he? In the kitchen.
2 Where are the shoes? 
3 Where is the pen? 
4 Where is the clock? 
5 Where is the bus? 
6 Where are the horses? 
7 Where are they standing? 
8 Where is she swimming? 
9 Where is he standing? 
10 Where is the spider? 
11 Where is he sitting? 
12 Where is she sitting? 

106.2 Write in/at/on.

1 Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
2 What have you got in your bag?
3 Look! There's a man on the roof. What's he doing?
4 There are a lot of fish in this river.
5 Our house is number 45—the number is on the door.
6 'Is the post office near here?' ‘Yes, turn left on the traffic lights.'
7 It's difficult to park on the centre of town. It's better to take the bus.
8 My sister lives in Brussels.
9 There's a small park on the top of the hill.
10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody at the door.
11 Munich is a large city in the south of Germany.
12 There are a few shops on the end of the street.
13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things on a bicycle.
14 I looked at the list of names. My name was at the bottom.
15 There is a mirror on the wall on the living room.
in

- in bed
- in hospital
- in the sky
- in the world
- in a newspaper / in a book
- in a photograph / in a picture
- in a car / in a taxi
- in the middle (of ...)

- ‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘She’s in bed.’
- David’s father is ill. He’s in hospital.
- I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.
- What’s the largest city in the world?
- I read about the accident in the newspaper.
- You look sad in this photograph.
- Did you come here in your car?
- There’s a big tree in the middle of the garden.

at

- at home
- at work / at school
- at university / at college
- at the station / at the airport
- at Jane’s (house) / at my sister’s (house) / at the doctor’s / at the hairdresser’s etc.
- at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.

- Will you be at home this evening?
- ‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘She’s at work.’
- Helen is studying law at university.
- I’ll meet you at the station, OK?
- A: Where were you yesterday?
  B: At my sister’s.
- I saw Tom at the doctor’s.
- There weren’t many people at the party.

Often it is possible to use in or at for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):
- We stayed at a nice hotel. or We stayed in a nice hotel.

on

- on a bus
- on the first floor
- on the way from A to B

- Did you come here on the bus?
- The office is on the first floor.
  (not in the first floor)
- I met Ann on the way to work / on the way home.
107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. Where is the hospital?
2. Where are they?
3. Where is he?
4. Where are they?
5. Where are the stars?
6. Where are they?
7. Where is the restaurant?
8. Where is the second floor?
9. Where is she?
10. Where are they?
11. Where are they?
12. Where are they?

107.2 Write in/at/on.

1. Helen is studying law at university.
2. There was a big table in the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river in the world?
4. Were there many people at the concert last night?
5. Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is the man in this photograph? Do you know him?
7. Where are your children? Are they at school?
8. Gary is coming by train. I’m going to meet him at the station.
9. Charlie is in hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there in this book?
11. ‘Are you hungry after your journey?’ ‘No, I had something to eat on the train.’
12. ‘Is Tom here?’ ‘No, he’s at his brother’s.’
13. Don’t believe everything you see on the newspaper!
14. I walked to work, but I came home at the bus.
to in at (places 3)

to

- go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...
- We're going to London on Sunday.
- I want to go to Italy next year.
- We walked from my house to the centre of town.
- What time do you go to bed?

in/at

- be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...
- Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- My brother lives in Italy.
- The main shops are in the centre of town.
- I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...

- The bus is at the airport.
- Sarah wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met a lot of people at the party.
- Helen stayed at her brother's house.

go/walk (etc.) home (without to):

- I'm tired. I'm going home.
- Did you walk home?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:

- I'm staying at home tonight.
- Dan doesn't go to an office. He works at home.

home

arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

- They arrived in England last week. (not arrived to England)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

- What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place):

- What time did you get to the hotel?
- What time did you get to Paris?

got home / arrived home (no preposition):

- I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.
Exercises

108.1 Write to or in.
1 I like reading ______ bed.
2 We’re going ______ Italy next month.
3 Sue is on holiday ______ Italy at the moment.
4 I have to go ______ the bank today.
5 I was tired, so I stayed _______ bed late.
6 What time do you usually go _______ bed?
7 Does this bus go _______ the centre?
8 Would you like to live _______ another country?

108.2 Write to or at if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 Paula didn’t go _______ work yesterday.
2 I’m tired. I’m going _______ home. (already complete)
3 Tina is not very well. She has gone _______ the doctor.
4 Would you like to come _______ a party on Saturday?
5 ‘Is Liz _______ home?’ ‘No, she’s gone _______ work.’
6 There were 20,000 people _______ the football match.
7 Why did you go _______ home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam _______ the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting _______ the bus stop.
10 We had a good meal _______ a restaurant, and then we went back _______ the hotel.

108.3 Write to, at or in if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 I’m not going out this afternoon. I’m staying _______ home.
2 We’re going _______ a concert tomorrow evening.
3 I went _______ New York last year.
4 How long did you stay _______ New York?
5 Next year we hope to go _______ Canada to visit some friends.
6 Do you want to go _______ the cinema this evening?
7 Did you park your car _______ the station?
8 After the accident three people were taken _______ hospital.
9 How often do you go _______ the dentist?
10 ‘Is Sarah here?’ ‘No, she’s _______ Helen’s.’
11 My house is _______ the end of the street on the left.
12 I went _______ Maria’s house, but she wasn’t _______ home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk _______ home.
14 ‘Who did you meet _______ the party?’ ‘I didn’t go _______ the party.’

108.4 Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 What time do you usually get _______ work?
2 What time do you usually get _______ home?
3 What time did you arrive _______ London?
4 When did you arrive _______ London?
5 What time does the train get _______ Paris?
6 We arrived _______ home very late.

108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.
1 At three o’clock this morning I was _______ bed.
2 Yesterday I went _______.
3 At 11 o’clock yesterday morning I was _______.
4 One day I’d like to go _______.
5 I don’t like going _______.
6 At 9 o’clock yesterday evening I was _______.

227
under, behind, opposite etc.

next to / beside / between / in front of / behind

A is next to B. or A is beside B.
B is between A and C.
D is in front of B.
E is behind B.

also
A is on the left.
C is on the right.
B is in the middle (of the group).

opposite / in front of

A is sitting in front of B.
A is sitting opposite C.
C is sitting opposite A.

by (= next to / beside)

□ Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)
□ Who is that man standing by the window?
□ If you feel cold, why don’t you sit by the fire?

by the window

under

□ The cat is under the table.
□ The girl is standing under a tree.
□ I’m wearing a jacket under my coat.

under the table  under a tree

above and below

A  A is above the line. (= higher than the line)
B  B is below the line. (= lower than the line)

The pictures are above the shelves.
The shelves are below the pictures.
Exercises

109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

1. Colin is standing ___________ Frank.
2. Frank is sitting ___________ Emma.
3. Emma is sitting ___________ Barbara.
4. Emma is sitting ___________ Donna and Frank.
5. Donna is sitting ___________ Emma.
6. Frank is sitting ___________ Colin.
7. Alan is standing ___________ Donna.
8. Alan is standing ___________ left.
9. Barbara is standing ___________ middle.

109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The cat is ___________ the table.
2. There is a big tree ___________ the house.
3. The plane is flying ___________ the clouds.
4. She is standing ___________ the piano.
5. The cinema is ___________ the right.
6. She's sitting ___________ the phone.
7. The switch is ___________ the window.
8. The cupboard is ___________ the sink.
9. There are some shoes ___________ the bed.
10. The plant is ___________ the piano.
11. Paul is sitting ___________ Fiona.
12. In Britain people drive ___________ the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.

1. (next to) ___________ The bank is next to the bookshop.
2. (in front of) ___________ The ___________ in front of
3. (opposite) ___________
4. (next to) ___________
5. (above) ___________
6. (between) ___________
up, over, through etc.

- Jane is going to France next week.
- We walked from the hotel to the station.
- A lot of English words come from Latin.

- We jumped into the water.
- A man came out of the house and got into a car.
- Why are you looking out of the window?
- I took the old batteries out of the radio.

We say put something in ... (not usually into):
- I put new batteries in the radio.

- Don't put your feet on the table.
- Please take your feet off the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures on the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall off your bicycle.
- We got on the bus in Princes Street.

- We walked up the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall down the stairs.

- The plane flew over the mountains.
- I jumped over the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder.

- A bird flew into the room through a window.
- The old road goes through the village.
- The new road goes round the village.
- The bus stop is just round the corner.
- I walked round the town and took some photographs.

You can also use around (= round):
- We walked around the town.

- I was walking along the road with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk along the river.
- The dog swam across the river.

- They walked past me without speaking.
- A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this road, past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.
110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go ... .

Excuse me, where is ... ?
Go ... 

1. Go past the church.
2. Go the bridge.
3. Go the hill.
4. Go the steps.
5. Go this street.

110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The dog swam across the river.
2. A book fell the shelf.
3. A plane flew the village.
4. A woman got the car.
5. A girl ran the road.
6. Suddenly a car came the corner.
7. They drove the village.
8. They got the train.
9. The moon travels the earth.
10. They got the house a window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use over/from/into etc.

1. I looked the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is very near here. It's just the corner.
3. ‘Where's my phone?’ ‘You put it your bag.’
4. How far is it the airport?
5. We walked the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball the net.
8. Silvia took a key her bag and opened the door.
on holiday  on television  on the radio  on the phone  on fire  on time (= not late)

- Jane isn’t at work this week. She’s on holiday.
- We watched the news on television.
- We listened to the news on the radio.
- I spoke to Rachel on the phone last night.
- The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.
- ‘Was the train late?’ ‘No, it was on time.’

at

- (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:
  - Lisa got married at 21. (or ... at the age of 21.)
  - A car uses more petrol at 120 kilometres an hour than at 90.
  - Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

by

- by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc.:
  - Do you like travelling by train?
  - Jane usually goes to work by bike.

- but on foot:
  - You can’t get there by car. You have to go on foot. (= you have to walk)

- a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:
  - Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
  - Who is that painting by? Picasso?

- by after the passive (⇒ Unit 21):
  - I was bitten by a dog.

with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don’t go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

- a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc.:
  - Do you know that man with the beard?
  - I’d like to have a house with a big garden.

about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...:
- Some people talk about their work all the time.
- I don’t know much about cars.

- a book / a question / a programme / information (etc.) about ...
  - There was a programme about volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?
Exercises

Unit 111

111.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>the phone</th>
<th>the radio</th>
<th>television</th>
<th>time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 We heard the news on the radio.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Please don’t be late. Try to be here.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I won’t be here next week. I’m going.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 ‘Did you see Linda?’ ‘No, but I talked to her.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 ‘What’s this evening?’ ‘Nothing that I want to watch.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with at/by/with etc.

1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
2 She usually goes to work by car.
3 Who is the woman with short hair?
4 They are talking about the weather.
5 The car is on fire.
6 She’s listening to some music by Mozart.
7 The plane is flying at 600 miles an hour.
8 They’re on holiday.
9 Do you know the man with sunglasses?
10 He’s reading a book about grammar by Vera P. Bull.

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use at/by/with etc.

1 In tennis, you hit the ball on a racket.
2 It’s cold today. Don’t go out by a coat.
3 Hamlet, Othello and Macbeth are plays by William Shakespeare.
4 Do you know anything about computers?
5 My grandmother died at the age of 98.
6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles by plane?
7 I didn’t go to the football match, but I watched it on television.
8 My house is the one by the red door on the right.
9 These trains are very fast. They can travel by very high speeds.
10 I don’t use my car very often. I prefer to go by bike.
11 Can you give me some information on hotels in this town?
12 I was arrested at two policemen and taken to the police station.
13 The buses here are very good. They’re nearly always on time.
14 What would you like to drink by your meal?
15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow by train.
16 The museum has some paintings by Rembrandt.
afraid of ... , good at ... etc.
of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

A

afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)

- Help!
- I'm not very good at maths.
- I'm fed up with my job.
- He's afraid of me.

- Are you afraid of dogs?
- Why are you angry with me? What have I done?
- Are you angry about last night? (= something that happened last night)
- Lisa is very different from (or to) her sister.

- I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at maths?
- I'm not interested in sport.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)

- It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.

- I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
- I'm sorry for/about not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
- I feel sorry for them. They are in a very difficult situation.

B

of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (of/at/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

| I'm not very good at with | telling stories. |
| Are you fed up with doing the same thing every day? |
| I'm sorry for not phoning you yesterday. |
| Thank you for helping me. |
| Mark is thinking of buying a new car. |
| Tom left without saying goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye) |
| After doing the shopping, they went home. |

before/after -ing → Unit 105 think about/of → Unit 113
Exercises

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with of/with/in etc.

1. He’s afraid ___ dogs.
2. She’s interested ___ science.
3. She’s married ___ a footballer.
4. She’s very good ___ languages.
5. He’s fed up ___ the weather.
6. A: Can I help you?
   B: Thanks, that’s very kind ___ you.

112.2 Complete the sentences with in/of/with etc.

1. I’m not interested ___ in sport.
2. I’m not very good ___ sport.
3. I like Sarah. She’s always very kind ___ me.
4. I’m sorry ___ your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He’s very brave. He isn’t afraid ___ anything.
6. It was very nice ___ to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different ___ life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested ___ politics?
9. I feel sorry ___ her, but I can’t help her.
10. Chris was angry ___ what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They are full ___ books.
12. I’m sorry ___ getting angry ___ you yesterday.

112.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I’m not very ___ good ___ telling stories. (good/tell)
2. I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn’t ___ interested ___ go.
3. Sue isn’t very ___ up ___ in the morning. (good/get)
4. Let’s go! I’m ___ you in the middle of the night. (fed up / wait)
5. I’m ___ you in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)
6. Sorry I’m late! ___ (thank you / wait)

112.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

1. (Tom left / he didn’t say goodbye)
   Tom left without saying goodbye.
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn’t speak)
   Sue walked ___
3. (don’t do anything / ask me first)
   Don’t ___
4. (I went out / I didn’t lock the door)
   I ___

112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (interested) ___ I’m interested in sport.
2. (afraid) ___ I’m ___
3. (not very good) ___ I’m ___
4. (not interested) ___
5. (fed up) ___
listen to ... , look at ... etc.
(verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) for ...
belong to ...
happen to ...
listen to ...
speak/talk to somebody about something
thank somebody for ...
think about ... or think of ...

wait for ...
write to somebody

but phone/call somebody (without to)

☐ A man stopped me and asked me for money.
☐ Does this book belong to you? (= Is this your book?)
☐ I can’t find my pen. What’s happened to it?
☐ Listen to this music. It’s great.
☐ Did you talk to Paul about the problem?
☐ (on the phone) Can I speak to Chris, please?
☐ Thank you very much for your help.
☐ He never thinks about (or of) other people.
☐ Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new computer.
☐ Wait for me. I’m nearly ready.
☐ I couldn’t contact the company by phone. I had to write to them.
☐ I’m going to phone my parents this evening. (not phone to my parents)

B

look at / look for / look after

look at ...

☐ He’s looking at his watch.
☐ Look at these flowers! They’re beautiful.
☐ Why are you looking at me like that?

look for ...
(= try to find)

☐ She’s lost her key. She’s looking for it.
☐ I’m looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after ...
(= take care of, keep safe)

☐ When Emily is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
☐ Don’t lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe.)

C

depend

We say depend on ...

☐ A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
   B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (not it depends of)

You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:

☐ A: Do you want to come out with us?
   B: It depends where you’re going, or It depends on where you’re going.
113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with to/for/at etc.

1. She’s looking ______ at ______ her watch.
2. He’s listening ______ the radio.
3. They’re waiting ______ a taxi.
4. Paul is talking ______ Jane.
5. They’re looking ______ a picture.
6. Sue is looking ______ Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with to/for/about etc. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1. Thank you very much ______ for ______ your help.
2. This isn’t my umbrella. It belongs ______ a friend of mine.
3. (on the phone) Can I speak ______ Steven Davis, please?
4. (on the phone) Thank you ______ calling. Goodbye.
5. What happened ______ Ella last night? Why didn’t she come to the party?
6. We’re thinking ______ going to Australia next year.
7. We asked the waiter ______ coffee, but he brought us tea.
8. ‘Do you like reading books?’ ‘It depends ______ the book.’
9. John was talking, but nobody was listening ______ what he was saying.
10. We waited ______ Karen until 2 o’clock, but she didn’t come.
11. If you want to contact me, you can write ______ me at this address.
12. Don’t forget to phone ______ your mother tonight.
13. He’s alone all day. He never talks ______ anybody.
14. ‘How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?’ ‘It depends ______ the type of room.’
15. Catherine is thinking ______ changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use at/for/after.

1. I looked ______ the newspaper, but I didn’t read it carefully.
2. When you are ill, you need somebody to look ______ you.
3. Excuse me, I’m looking ______ Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
4. Goodbye! Have a great holiday and look ______ yourself.
5. I want to take a photograph of you. Please look ______ the camera and smile.
6. Barry is looking ______ a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with It depends ...

1. Do you want to go out with us?
   It depends where you’re going.

2. Do you like eating in restaurants?
   It depends on the restaurant.

3. Do you enjoy watching TV?
   It ...

4. Can you do something for me?
   It ...

5. Are you going away this weekend?
   It ...

6. Can you lend me some money?
   It ...
### Unit 114

**go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)**

A *phrasal verb* is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>in</strong></th>
<th><strong>out</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- I waited outside the shop. I didn’t <strong>go in</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sarah opened the door of the car and got <strong>in</strong>. (≈ into the car)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- I went to the window and <strong>looked out</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The car stopped and a woman got <strong>out</strong>. (≈ out of the car)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>on</strong></th>
<th><strong>off</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- The bus came, and I got <strong>on</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Be careful! Don’t <strong>fall off</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>up</strong></th>
<th><strong>down</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- He stood <strong>up</strong> and left the room.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- I usually get <strong>up</strong> early. (≈ get out of bed)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- We looked <strong>up</strong> at the stars in the sky.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The picture fell <strong>down</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Would you like to sit <strong>down</strong>?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lie <strong>down</strong> on the floor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>away or off</strong></th>
<th><strong>back</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- The thief ran <strong>away</strong>. (or … ran <strong>off</strong>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Emma got into the car and drove away. (or … drove <strong>off</strong>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The thief ran <strong>away</strong>. (or … ran <strong>off</strong>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Emma got into the car and drove away. (or … drove <strong>off</strong>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Go away and don’t <strong>come back</strong>!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- We went out for dinner and then <strong>went back</strong> to our hotel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>be/go away (= in/to another place)</strong></th>
<th><strong>be back</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Tim has gone <strong>away</strong> for a few days.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tim is away. He’ll <strong>be back</strong> on Monday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>over</strong></th>
<th><strong>round (or around)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- The wall wasn’t very high, so we climbed <strong>over</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Turn <strong>over</strong> and look at the next page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Somebody shouted my name, so I looked <strong>round (or around)</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- We went for a long walk. After an hour we turned <strong>round (or around)</strong> and went back.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + in/out/up etc.

1. I went to the window and __________.
2. The door was open, so we __________.
3. He heard a plane, so he __________.
4. She got on her bike and __________.
5. I said hello, and he __________.
6. The bus stopped, and she __________.
7. There was a free seat, so she __________.
8. A car stopped, and two men __________.

114.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

1. ‘What happened to the picture on the wall?’ ‘It fell __________!’
2. Wait a minute. Don’t go __________. I want to ask you something.
3. Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked __________ to see what it was.
4. I’m going __________ now to do some shopping. I’ll be __________ at 5 o’clock.
5. I’m feeling very tired. I’m going to lie __________ on the sofa.
6. When you have read this page, turn __________ and read the other side.
7. Mark is from Canada. He lives in London now, but he wants to go __________ to Canada.
8. We haven’t got a key to the house, so we can’t get __________.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn’t get __________.
10. A: ‘When are you going __________?’
    B: ‘On the 5th. And I’m coming __________ on the 24th.’

114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250).
Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + on/off/up etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

- break
- fall
- give
- hold
- speak
- wake
- carry
- get
- go
- slow
- take

+ on/off/up/down/over

1. I went to sleep at 10 o’clock and __________ at 8 o’clock the next morning.
2. ‘It’s time to go.’ __________ a minute. I’m not ready yet.’
3. The train __________ and finally stopped.
4. I like flying, but I’m always nervous when the plane __________.
5. How are your children? How are they __________ at school?
6. It’s difficult to hear you. Can you __________ a little?
7. This car isn’t very good. It has __________ many times.
8. When babies try to walk, they sometimes __________.
9. The hotel isn’t far from here. If you __________ along this road, you’ll see it on the left.
10. I tried to find a job, but I __________. It was impossible.
11. The fire alarm __________ and everyone had to leave the building.
Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off etc.) has an object. For example:

**verb**    **object**
put on     your coat

You can say:
- put on your coat
- or put your coat on

But it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.:
- put it on (not put on it)
  - It was cold, so I put on my coat.
  - (or I put my coat on)
  - Here’s your coat. Put it on.
- take them off (not take off them)
  - I’m going to take off my shoes.
  - (or take my shoes off)
  - Your shoes are dirty. Take them off.

Some more phrasal verbs + object:

**turn on / turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):
- It was dark, so I turned on the light.
  - (or I turned the light on)
- I don’t want to watch this programme. You can turn it off.

*also switch on / switch off* (lights, machines etc.):
- I switched on the light and switched off the television.

**pick up / put down:**
- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?
- I stopped reading and put my book down.
  - (or put down my book)

**bring back / take back / give back / put back:**
- You can take my umbrella, but please bring it back.
- I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.
- I’ve got Rachel’s keys. I have to give them back to her.
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.
Exercises

115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

1 He turned on the light
2 She ............................................................
3 He ............................................................
4 She ............................................................
5 He ............................................................
6 She ............................................................

115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 I turned on the radio.</th>
<th>I turned the radio on.</th>
<th>I turned it on.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 He put on his jacket.</td>
<td>He ____________________</td>
<td>He ____________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 She ____________________</td>
<td>She took her glasses off.</td>
<td>____________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I picked up the phone.</td>
<td>____________________</td>
<td>____________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 They gave back the key.</td>
<td>____________________</td>
<td>____________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 ____________________</td>
<td>We turned the lights off.</td>
<td>____________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with it or them.

bring back pick up switch off take back turn on

1 I wanted to watch something on television, so I turned it on.
2 My new lamp doesn’t work. I’m going to ____________________ to the shop.
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I ____________________ and put them on the table.
4 The heating was on but it was too warm, so I ____________________ .
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won’t forget to ____________________ .

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251). Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use it/them/me.

fill in knock down look up show round turn down
give up knock over put out throw away try on

1 They knocked a lot of houses down when they built the new road.
2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down?
3 I ____________________ a glass and broke it.
4 ‘What does this word mean?’ ‘Here’s a dictionary. You can ____________________ .’
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don’t ____________________ .
6 I ____________________ a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn’t buy them.
7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers ____________________ .
8 ‘Do you play the piano?’ ‘No, I started to learn, but I ____________________ after a month.’
9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to ____________________ .
10 Smoking isn’t allowed here. Please ____________________ your cigarette .
## Appendix 1
### Active and passive

### 1.1 Present and past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>active</strong></th>
<th><strong>passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>present</strong></td>
<td>□ We <strong>make</strong> butter from milk.</td>
<td>□ Butter is <strong>made</strong> from milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple</td>
<td>□ Somebody <strong>cleans</strong> these rooms every day.</td>
<td>□ These rooms are <strong>cleaned</strong> every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ People never <strong>invite</strong> me to parties.</td>
<td>□ I am never <strong>invited</strong> to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ How do they <strong>make</strong> butter?</td>
<td>□ How is butter <strong>made</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past</strong></td>
<td>□ Somebody <strong>stole</strong> my car last week.</td>
<td>□ My car was <strong>stolen</strong> last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple</td>
<td>□ Somebody <strong>stole</strong> my keys yesterday.</td>
<td>□ My keys were <strong>stolen</strong> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ They <strong>didn’t invite</strong> me to the party.</td>
<td>□ I wasn’t <strong>invited</strong> to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ When did they <strong>build</strong> these houses?</td>
<td>□ When were these houses <strong>built</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>present</strong></td>
<td>□ They <strong>are building</strong> a new airport at the moment. (= it isn’t finished)</td>
<td>□ A new airport is <strong>being built</strong> at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuous</td>
<td>□ They <strong>are building</strong> some new houses near the river.</td>
<td>□ Some new houses are <strong>being built</strong> near the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ When I was here a few years ago, they <strong>were building</strong> a new airport. (= it wasn’t finished at that time)</td>
<td>□ When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was <strong>being built</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>present</strong></td>
<td>□ Look! They <strong>have painted</strong> the door.</td>
<td>□ Look! The door has been <strong>painted</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect</td>
<td>□ These shirts are clean. Somebody <strong>has washed</strong> them.</td>
<td>□ These shirts are clean. They have been <strong>washed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Somebody <strong>has stolen</strong> my car.</td>
<td>□ My car has been <strong>stolen</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past perfect</strong></td>
<td>□ Tina said that somebody <strong>had stolen</strong> her car.</td>
<td>□ Tina said that her car had been <strong>stolen</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.2 will / can / must / have to etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>active</strong></th>
<th><strong>passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Somebody <strong>will clean</strong> the office tomorrow.</td>
<td>□ The office <strong>will be cleaned</strong> tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Somebody <strong>must clean</strong> the office.</td>
<td>□ The office <strong>must be cleaned</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ I think they’ll <strong>invite</strong> you to the party.</td>
<td>□ I think you’ll be <strong>invited</strong> to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ They <strong>can’t repair</strong> my watch.</td>
<td>□ My watch can’t be <strong>repaired</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ You <strong>should wash</strong> this sweater by hand.</td>
<td>□ This sweater should be <strong>washed</strong> by hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ They are <strong>going to build</strong> a new airport.</td>
<td>□ A new airport is <strong>going to be built</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Somebody <strong>has to wash</strong> these clothes.</td>
<td>□ These clothes <strong>have to be washed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ They <strong>had to take</strong> the injured man to hospital.</td>
<td>□ The injured man <strong>had to be taken</strong> to hospital.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 2

### List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>lit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read (reed)*</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple / past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burned or burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed or dreamt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple / past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned or learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelled or smelt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Appendix 3

## Irregular verbs in groups

### The past simple and past participle are the same:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost → cost</td>
<td>let → let</td>
<td>lend → lent</td>
<td>lose → lost</td>
<td>bring → brought</td>
<td>sell → sold</td>
<td>find → found</td>
<td>begin → began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut → cut</td>
<td>put → put</td>
<td>send → sent</td>
<td>shoot → shot</td>
<td>buy → bought</td>
<td>tell → told</td>
<td>have → had</td>
<td>drink → drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit → hit</td>
<td>shut → shut</td>
<td>spend → spent</td>
<td>get → got</td>
<td>fight → fought</td>
<td>hear → heard</td>
<td>hold → held</td>
<td>swim → swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt → hurt</td>
<td></td>
<td>build → built</td>
<td>light → lit</td>
<td>think → thought</td>
<td>read → read</td>
<td>ring → rang</td>
<td>sing → sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>burn → burnt</td>
<td>sit → sat</td>
<td>catch → caught</td>
<td>say → said</td>
<td>say → said (sed)*</td>
<td>run → ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>learn → learnt</td>
<td></td>
<td>teach → taught</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>smell → smelt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>feel → felt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>leave → left</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>meet → met</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dream → dreamt (dreamt)*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mean → meant (ment)*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

### The past simple and past participle are different:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break → broke</td>
<td>drove → driven</td>
<td>ate → eaten</td>
<td>blow → blew</td>
<td>began → begun</td>
<td>came → came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose → chose</td>
<td>rode → ridden</td>
<td>fall → fell</td>
<td>grew → grown</td>
<td>drank → drunk</td>
<td>became → became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak → spoke</td>
<td>rose → risen</td>
<td>forget → forgot</td>
<td>know → knew</td>
<td>swim → swam</td>
<td>run → ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal → stole</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>give → gave</td>
<td>thrown</td>
<td>ring → rang</td>
<td>sing → sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake → woke</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>see → saw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
<td>say → said</td>
<td>run → ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

245
Appendix 4
Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I'm) is a way of writing this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>I'm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it is</td>
<td>it's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>they've</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

□ I'm feeling tired this morning.
□ ‘Do you like this jacket?’ ‘Yes, it's nice.’
□ ‘Where are your friends?’ ‘They’ve gone home.’

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):

I am → I’m
he is → he’s
you have → you’ve
she will → she’ll

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am → 'm</th>
<th>is → 's</th>
<th>are → 're</th>
<th>have → 've</th>
<th>has → 's</th>
<th>had → 'd</th>
<th>will → 'll</th>
<th>would → 'd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm</td>
<td>he's</td>
<td>she's</td>
<td>it's</td>
<td>we're</td>
<td>you're</td>
<td>they're</td>
<td>I'd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

□ I’ve got some new shoes.
□ We’ll probably go out this evening.
□ It’s 10 o’clock. You’re late again.

’s = is or has:
□ She’s going out this evening. (she’s going = she is going)
□ She’s gone out. (she’s gone = she has gone)

‘d = would or had:
□ A: What would you like to eat?
   B: I’d like a salad, please. (I’d like = I would like)
□ I told the police that I’d lost my passport. (I’d lost = I had lost)

Do not use ’m/s/’d etc. at the end of a sentence (→ Unit 40):
□ ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am.’ (not Yes, I’m.)
□ She isn’t tired, but he is. (not he’s)

4.3 We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc., but you can use short forms (especially ‘s) with other words too:

□ Who’s your favourite singer? (= who is)
□ What’s the time? (= what is)
□ There’s a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
□ My sister’s working in London. (= my sister is working)
□ Paul’s gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
□ What colour’s your car? (= What colour is your car?)
Appendix 4

Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>isn't (= is not)</th>
<th>don't (= do not)</th>
<th>can't (= cannot)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aren't (= are not)</td>
<td>doesn't (= does not)</td>
<td>couldn't (= could not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasn't (= was not)</td>
<td>didn't (= did not)</td>
<td>won't (= will not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren't (= were not)</td>
<td></td>
<td>wouldn't (= would not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasn't (= has not)</td>
<td></td>
<td>shouldn't (= should not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven't (= have not)</td>
<td></td>
<td>mustn't (= must not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hadn't (= had not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We went to her house, but she wasn't at home.
- 'Where's David?' ‘I don't know. I haven't seen him.’
- You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s)
's can mean different things:

(1) 's = is or has (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)

(2) let's = let us (→ Units 35, 53)
   - It's a lovely day. Let's go out. (= Let us go out.)

(3) Kate's camera = her camera
    my brother's car = his car
    the manager's office = his/her office etc.
    (→ Unit 64)

Compare:
- Kate's camera was very expensive. (Kate's camera = her camera)
- Kate's a very good photographer. (Kate's = Kate is)
- Kate's got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate has got)
## Appendix 5
### Spelling

#### 5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>noun</strong> + s (plural)</td>
<td>→ Unit 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bird → birds</td>
<td>mistake → mistakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>verb</strong> + s (he/she/it -s)</td>
<td>→ Unit 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think → thinks</td>
<td>live → lives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*but*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bus → buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish → dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch → watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box → boxes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*also*

| potato → potatoes | tomato → tomatoes |
| do → does | go → goes |

* -f / -fe → -ves

| shelf → shelves | knife → knives |
| but | roof → roofs |

#### 5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>study → studies (not study's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>story → stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try → tries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* -y → -ied (→ Unit 11)*

| study → studied (not study'ed) | marry → married | copy → copied |
| try → tried | |

* -y → -ier/-iest (→ Units 87, 90)*

| easy → easier/easiest (not easier/easiest) | lucky → luckier/luckiest |
| happy → happier/happiest | funny → funnier/funniest |
| heavy → heavier/heaviest |

* -y → -ily (→ Unit 86)*

| easy → easily (not easily) | heavy → heavily | lucky → luckily |
| happy → happily |

* y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:*

| holiday → holidays (not holidays) | enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed | stay → stays/stayed | buy → buys | key → keys |

*but*

| say → said | pay → paid |

(irregular verbs)
Appendix 5

Spelling

5.3 -ing
Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.) → -ing:
make → making  write → writing  come → coming  dance → dancing
Verbs that end in -ie → -ying:
lie → lying  die → dying  tie → tying

5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger etc.
Vowels and consonants:
Vowel letters: a e i o u
Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a vowel + a consonant. For example: stop, big, get.
Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, p/g/t etc. become pp/gg/tt etc.
For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+C</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>O P</td>
<td>p → pp</td>
<td>stopping</td>
<td>stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>R U N</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>running</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>G E T</td>
<td>t → tt</td>
<td>getting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>S W I M</td>
<td>m → mm</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>B I G</td>
<td>g → gg</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>H O T</td>
<td>t → tt</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>hottest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>T H I N</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This does not happen
(1) if the word ends in two consonant letters (C + C):
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C+C</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>H E L P</td>
<td>helping</td>
<td>helped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>W O R K</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>F A S T</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>fastest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+V+C</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>N E E D</td>
<td>needing</td>
<td>needed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>W A I T</td>
<td>waiting</td>
<td>waited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>C H E A P</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

| stress | happen | HAP-pen | happening/happened (not happened) |
|        | visit  | VIS-it  | visiting/visited                   |
|        | remember | re-MEM-ber | remembering/remembered |

but

| stress | prefer | pre-FER | (stress at the end) | preferr-ing/preferr-ed |
|        | begin  | be-GIN  | (stress at the end)  | beginning |

(4) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

earny → enjoying/enjoyed  snow → snowing/snowed  few → fewer/fewest

249
Appendix 6
Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

**on**
- *carry on* = continue
  - Don’t stop working. **Carry on.** (= continue working)
  - A: Excuse me, where is the station?
  - B: **Carry on** along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along …)
- *also go on / walk on / drive on etc.* = continue going/walking/driving etc.
- Don’t stop here. **Drive on.**

**come on** = be quick
- **Come on!** Everybody is waiting for you.

**get on** = manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)
- How was your exam? How did you **get on**? (= how did you do?)

**hold on** = wait
- Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)

**off**
- *take off* = leave the ground (for planes)
  - The plane **took off** 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.
- *go off* = explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)
  - A bomb **went off** and caused a lot of damage.
  - A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.

**up**
- *give up* = stop trying
  - I know it’s difficult, but don’t **give up**. (= don’t stop trying)
- *grow up* = become an adult
  - What does your son want to do when he **grow up**?
- *hurry up* = do something more quickly
  - **Hurry up!** We haven’t got much time.
- *speak up* = speak more loudly
  - I can’t hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?
- *wake up* = stop sleeping
  - I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.
- *wash up* = wash the plates etc. after a meal
  - Do you want me to **wash up**? (or … to do the washing-up?)

**down**
- *slow down* = go more slowly
  - You’re driving too fast. **Slow down**!
- *break down* = stop working (for cars, machines etc.)
  - Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.

**over**
- *fall over* = lose your balance
  - I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

**in/out** 
fill in / fill out a form = complete a form
- Can you fill in this form, please? or
  Can you fill out this form, please?

**out** 
put out a fire, a cigarette etc.
- The fire brigade arrived and put the fire out.
cross out a mistake, a word etc.
- If you make a mistake, cross it out.

**on** 
try on clothes = put on clothes to see if they fit you
- (in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I try it on?

**up**
give up something = stop doing it
- Sue gave up her job when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
- ‘Are you still learning Italian?’ ‘No, I gave it up.’

look up a word in a dictionary etc.
- I didn’t know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = make it louder or warmer
- Can you turn the radio up? I can’t hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping
- I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you wake me up at 6.30?

**down**
knock down a building = demolish it
- They are going to knock down the school and build a new one.

turn down the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = make it more quiet or less warm
- The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?

**over**
knock over a cup, a glass, a person etc.
- Be careful. Don’t knock your cup over.
- There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was knocked over by a car.
  (or A man was knocked down by a car.)

**away**
throw away rubbish, things you don’t want
- These apples are bad. Shall I throw them away?
- Don’t throw away that picture. I want it.

put something away = put it in the place where you usually keep it
- After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.

**back**
pay somebody back = give back money that you borrowed
- Thank you for lending me the money. I’ll pay you back next week.

**round/around**
show somebody round/around = take somebody on a tour of a place
- We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round.
# Additional exercises

List of exercises:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Type of Exercise</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>am/is/are</td>
<td>Units 1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>Units 3–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>Units 5–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–7</td>
<td>present simple, am/is/are and have (got)</td>
<td>Units 1–2, 5–7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–9</td>
<td>present continuous and present simple</td>
<td>Units 3–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10–13</td>
<td>was/were and past simple</td>
<td>Units 10–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>past simple and past continuous</td>
<td>Units 11–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>present and past</td>
<td>Units 3–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16–18</td>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>Units 15–19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19–22</td>
<td>present perfect and past simple</td>
<td>Units 18–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>present, past and present perfect</td>
<td>Units 3–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24–27</td>
<td>passive</td>
<td>Units 21–22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>Units 25–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>past, present and future</td>
<td>Units 3–20, 25–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–31</td>
<td>past, present and future</td>
<td>Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>-ing and to ...</td>
<td>Units 51–55, 105, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33–34</td>
<td>a and the</td>
<td>Units 65, 69–73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>prepositions</td>
<td>Units 103–108, 111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### am/is/are

#### Units 1–2

1. Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + is/aren't.

   - The windows
   - Lisa
   - Kate
   - The children
   - Gary
   - The books
   - The hotel
   - The bus
   - on the table
   - hungry
   - asleep
   - open
   - full
   - near the station
   - a doctor
   - happy

   **1. The windows are open.**
   **2. Lisa isn't happy.**
   **3. Kate**
   **4. Gary**
   **5. The children**
   **6. The books**
   **7. The hotel**
   **8. The bus**
2 Complete the sentences.
1 ‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, but I’m thirsty.’
2 ‘How are your parents?’ ‘They’re fine.’
3 ‘Is Anna at home?’ ‘No, __________________________ at work.’
4 ‘________________________ my keys?’ ‘On your desk.’
5 Where is Paul from? __________ American or British?
6 __________________________ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees.
7 ‘Are you a teacher?’ ‘No, __________________________ a student.’
8 __________________________ your umbrella?’ ‘Green.’
9 Where’s your car? __________________________ in the car park?
10 ‘________________________ tired?’ ‘No, I’m fine.’
11 ‘These shoes are nice. How __________________________?’ ‘Fifty pounds.’

present continuous (I’m working / are you working? etc.)

3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.
1 A: Where are your parents?
   B: __________________________ (they / watch / TV)
2 A: Paula is going out.
   B: __________________________ (where / she / go?)
3 A: Where’s David?
   B: __________________________ (he / have / a shower)
4 A: __________________________?
   B: No, they’re asleep.
5 A: __________________________?
   B: No, not at the moment.
6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?
   B: __________________________ (they / come / now)
7 A: __________________________?
   B: __________________________ (why / you / stand / here?)
   (I / wait / for somebody)

present simple (I work / she doesn’t work / do you work? etc.)

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.
1 Sue always gets __________ to work early.
2 __________________________ TV very often.
3 How often __________ you wash __________ your hair?
4 I want to go to the cinema, but __________ to go.
5 __________________________ to go out tonight?
6 __________________________ near here?
7 __________________________ a lot of people.
8 I enjoy travelling, but __________ very much.
9 __________________________ in the morning?
10 My parents are usually at home in the evening.
   __________________________ very often.
11 __________________________ work at five o’clock.
12 A: What __________?
    B: __________________________ in a hotel.
5 Read the questions and Clare's answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Clare's Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Are you married?</td>
<td>No. She isn't married.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Do you live in London?</td>
<td>Yes. She lives in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Are you a student?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Have you got a car?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Do you go out a lot?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Have you got a lot of friends?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Do you like dancing?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Complete the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. What's your name?</td>
<td>Brian.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Where are you married?</td>
<td>Yes, I am. In Barton Road.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How many any children?</td>
<td>Yes, a daughter. She's three.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. What's your job?</td>
<td>I'm 29. I work in a supermarket. No, I hate it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Do you have a car?</td>
<td>Yes, I have. No, I usually go by bus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1. Sarah often / tennis
   Sarah often plays tennis.

2. my parents / a new car
   My parents have got a new car.

3. my shoes / dirty
   My shoes are dirty.

4. Sonia / 32 years old
   Sonia.

5. I / two sisters
   I have two sisters.

6. we often / TV in the evening
   We often watch TV in the evening.

7. Jane never / a hat
   Jane never has a hat.

8. a bicycle / two wheels
   She has a bicycle with two wheels.

9. these flowers / beautiful
   These flowers are beautiful.

10. Mary / German very well
    Mary speaks German very well.
Complete the sentences.

1. Please be quiet. I’m working. [I work]
2. Do you often go [you often go] to the cinema?
3. What [you cook]?
4. Jack [play] the piano very well.
5. [I go] now. Goodbye!
6. [it rain]. Can I take this umbrella?
7. [I not watch] TV very much.
8. Excuse me, [we look] for the museum.
9. What’s this word? How [you pronounce] it?

Which is right?

1. ‘Are you speaking? / Do you speak English?’ ‘Yes, a little.’ (Do you speak is right)
2. Sometimes we’re going / we go away at weekends.
3. It’s a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. (You meet Kate in the street.) ‘Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?’
5. How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
6. Emily is a writer. She’s writing / She writes books for children.
7. I’m never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. ‘Where are Michael and Jane?’ ‘They’re watching / They watch TV in the living room.’
9. Helen is in her office. She’s talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn’t at home at the moment. He’s visiting / He visits some friends.
12. ‘Would you like some tea?’ ‘No, thank you. I’m not drinking / I don’t drink tea.’
Additional exercises

was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

Units 10–12

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1 I got up early and ______ had ______ a shower.
2 Tom was tired last night, so he ___________ to bed early.
3 I ___________ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4 Kate got married when she ___________ 23.
5 Helen is learning to drive. She ___________ her first lesson yesterday.
6 ‘I’ve got a new job.’ ‘Yes, I know. David ___________ me.’
7 ‘Where did you buy that book?’ ‘It was a present. Jane ___________ it to me.’
8 We ___________ hungry, so we had something to eat.
9 ‘Did you enjoy the film?’ ‘Yes, I ___________ it was very good.’
10 ‘Did Andy come to your party?’ ‘No, we ___________ him, but he didn’t come.’

11 Look at the questions and Kevin’s answers. Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.

When you were a child ...
   Were you tall?
   Did you like school?
   Were you good at sport?
   Did you play football?
   Did you work hard at school?
   Did you have a lot of friends?
   Did you have a bicycle?
   Were you a quiet child?

Kevin

No. 1 He wasn’t tall.
No. 2 He liked school.
Yes. 3 He ___________.
Yes. 4 He ___________.
No. 5 He ___________.
Yes. 6 He ___________.
No. 7 He ___________.
No. 8 He ___________.

12 Complete the questions.

Did you have a nice holiday?
Yes, it was great, thanks.
To Amsterdam.
Five days.
Yes, very much.
I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
Yes, it was warm and sunny.
Yesterday.

1 Where did you go?
2 ___________ there?
3 Amsterdam?
4 ___________?
5 ___________ good?
6 ___________ back?

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

1 It was a good party. ______ enjoyed ______ it. (I / enjoy)
2 ___________ the shopping? (you / do) ‘No, I ___________ time.’ (I / have)
3 ‘Did you phone Adam?’ ‘No, I’m afraid ___________ .’ (I / forget)
4 I like your new watch. Where ___________ it? (you / get)
5 I saw Lucy at the party, but ___________ to her. (I / speak)
6 A: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
   B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
7 Paul wasn’t well yesterday, so ___________ to work. (he / go)
8 ‘Is Mary here?’ ‘Yes, ___________ five minutes ago.’ (she / arrive)
9 Where ___________ before he moved here? (Robert / live)
10 The restaurant wasn’t expensive. ___________ very much. (the meal / cost)
past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

14 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

1. It **was raining** (rain) when we **went** (go) out.

2. When I arrived at the office, Jane and Paul **were working** (work) at their desks.

3. I **opened** (open) the window because it was hot.

4. The phone **rang** (ring) when Sue **was cooking** (cook) the dinner.

5. I **heard** (hear) a noise outside, so I **looked** (look) out of the window.

6. Tom **looked** (look) out of the window when the accident **happened** (happen).

7. Richard had a book in his hand, but he **did not read** (not/read) it. He **watched** (watch) TV.

8. Catherine bought a magazine, but she **did not read** (not/read) it. She didn’t have time.

9. I **finished** (finish) my meal, **paid** (pay) the bill and **left** (leave) the restaurant.

10. I **saw** (see) Kate this morning. I **walked** (walk) along the street and she **waited** (wait) for the bus.
15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

- present simple (I work/drive etc.)
- past simple (I worked/drove etc.)
- present continuous (I am working/driving etc.)
- past continuous (I was working/driving etc.)

1. You can turn off the television. I ________ (not/watch) it.
2. Last night Jenny ________ (fall) asleep while she ________ (read).
3. Listen! Somebody ________ (play) the piano.
4. 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I ________ (give) it back to you.'
5. David is very lazy. He ________ (not/like) hard work.
6. Where ________ (your parents / go) for their holidays last year?
7. I ________ (see) Diane yesterday. She ________ (drive) her new car.
8. A: ________ (you/watch) television very much?
   B: No, I haven't got a television set.
9. A: What ________ (you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning?
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn't at home very much. He ________ (go) away a lot.
11. I ________ (try) to find a job at the moment. It's very difficult.
12. I'm tired this morning. I ________ (not/sleep) very well last night.

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Goodbye, Tom!
   5 minutes later
   Is Tom at home?
   No, he's just
   ________ (not/gone out).

2. Who's that man?
   I don't know.
   I ________ (never/seen) him before.

3. Are you still watching the film?
   No, it ________ (not/just/finished).

4. I'm looking for my glasses.
   Here they are!
   I ________ (not/find) them!
5. Is this a good book?
   I don't know.
   I ........................................ it.

6. I'm looking for Julia. ........................................ her?
   Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.

7. More coffee?
   No, thanks.
   I ........................................ enough.

8. ........................................ to Sweden?
   Yes, I went there a few years ago.

9. Hi. We ........................................ later to the cinema.

10. Enjoy the party!
    Where are Steve and Jane?
    ........................................
    to a party.

11. Paul was asleep in the armchair. He ........................................ up.

12. How long ........................................ here?
    Since 2002.

13. Do you know Alan?
    Yes, we ........................................ each other for a long time.

14. ........................................
    The weather is horrible here. It ........................................ all day.

259
17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).
1 Mark and Liz are married. They ________ married for five years.
2 David has been watching TV ________ 5 o’clock.
3 Martin is at work. He ________________ at work since 8.30.
4 ‘Have you just arrived in London?’ ‘No, I’ve been here ________________ five days.’
5 I’ve known Helen ________________ we were at school together.
6 ‘My brother lives in Los Angeles.’ ‘Really? How long ________________ there?’
7 George has had the same job ________________ 20 years.
8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They ________________ here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.
1 I’ve never ________ ridden a horse.
2 I’ve ________ been to London ________ many times.
3 I’ve just ________________
4 I’ve ________________
   (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5 I haven’t ________________ yet.
6 I’ve never ________________
7 I’ve ________________ since
8 I’ve ________________ for

---

present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

Units 18–20

19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).
1 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. I ___________ there.
2 A: Have you seen Kate?
   B: Yes, I ___________ her five minutes ago.
3 A: That’s a nice sweater. Is it new?
   B: Yes, I ___________ it last week.
4 A: Are you tired this morning?
   B: Yes, I ___________ to bed last night.
5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?
   B: You can have it. I ___________ it.
6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?
   B: I ___________ yet. My first day is next Monday.
7 A: The weather isn’t very nice today, is it?
   B: No, but it ___________ nice yesterday.
8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
   B: I don’t think so. I ___________ her there.
9 A: Is your son still at school?
   B: No, he ___________ school two years ago.
10 A: Is Silvia married?
    B: Yes, she ___________ married for five years.
11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
    B: Of course. He ___________ the first President of the United States.
12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
    B: I don’t know. I ___________ a pizza.
20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
   B: Yes, ______ I went there last year. ______ (I / go / there / last year)

2 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. ______ I’ve never been there. ______ (I / never / there)

3 A: What time is Paul going out?
   B: ___________________________ (he / already / go)

4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
   B: Yes, ___________________________ (she / leave / at 4 o’clock)

5 A: New York is my favourite city.
   B: Is it? ___________________________ (how many times / you / there?)

6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
   B: I don’t know. ___________________________ (I / not / decide / yet)

7 A: I can’t find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: ___________________________ (it / on the table / last night)

8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?
   B: Yes, ___________________________ (I / eat / there a few times)

9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
   B: Are they? ___________________________ (what time / they / arrive?)

21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: ______ Have you been ______ to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When ______ the last time?
   B: Two years ago.

2 A: Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long ______ it?
   B: It’s new. I ______ it yesterday.

3 A: Where do you live?
   B: In Harold Street.
   A: How long ______ there?
   B: Five years. Before that ______ in Mill Road.
   A: How long ______ in Mill Road?
   B: About three years.

4 A: What do you do?
   B: I work in a shop.
   A: How long ______ there?
   B: Nearly two years.
   A: What ______ before that?
   B: I ______ a taxi driver.
Additional exercises

22 Write sentences about yourself.
1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
2 (last night)
3 (yesterday afternoon)
4 (… days ago)
5 (last week)
6 (last year)

present, past and present perfect

23 Which is right?

1 ‘Is Sue working? (C)’ ‘No, she’s on holiday.’
   A Does Sue work? B Is working Sue? C Is Sue working? D Does work Sue?
2 ‘Where ____________________________?’ ‘In a village near London.’
   A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives D does live your uncle
3 I speak Italian, but ____________________________ French.
   A I speak not B I’m not speaking C I doesn’t speak D I don’t speak
4 ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘_________________________ a shower at the moment.’
   A He’s having B He have C He has D He has had
5 Why ____________________________ angry with me yesterday?
   A were you B was you C you were D have you been
6 My favourite film is Cleo’s Dream. ____________________________ it four times.
   A I’m seeing B I see C I was seeing D I’ve seen
7 I ____________________________ out last night. I was too tired.
   A don’t go B didn’t went C didn’t go D haven’t gone
8 Liz is from Chicago. She ____________________________ there all her life.
   A is living B has lived C lives D lived
9 My friend ____________________________ for me when I arrived.
   A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting
10 ‘How long ____________________________ English?’ ‘Six months.’
   A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning D have you been learning
11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there ____________________________.
   A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three years
12 ‘What time ____________________________?’ ‘About an hour ago.’
   A has Lisa phoned B Lisa has phoned C did Lisa phone D is Lisa phoning
13 What ____________________________ when you saw her?
   A did Sue wear B was Sue wearing C has Sue worn D was wearing Sue
14 ‘Can you drive?’ ‘No, ____________________________ a car, but I want to learn.’
   A I never drive B I’m never driving C I’ve never driven D I was never driving
15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she ____________________________ me.
   A didn’t see B don’t see C hasn’t seen D didn’t saw
24 Complete the sentences.

1. These houses were built (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building was damaged (damage) in a fire and had to be knocked down (knock down).

2. This bridge was built (build) in 1955. It is used (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge is being painted (paint).

3. This street is called Wilton Street. It used to be called (call) James Street, but the name has been changed (change) a few years ago.

4. This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles are made (make) here since 1961. It’s the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles are produced (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1. We were invited (invite) to the party, but we didn’t go.
2. The museum is very popular. Every year it is visited (visit) by thousands of people.
3. Many buildings were damaged (damage) in the storm last week.
4. A new road is going to be built (build) next year.
5. ‘Where’s your jacket?’ ‘It was cleaned (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.’
6. She’s famous now, but in a few years her name will be forgotten (forget).
7. ‘Shall I do the washing-up?’ ‘No, it should be kept (keep) in a fridge.
8. Milk should be kept (keep) in a fridge.
9. ‘Have you ever been bitten (you/every/bite) by a snake?’
10. My bag was stolen (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1. Somebody has stolen my keys.
   My keys have been stolen.
2. Somebody stole my car last week.
   My car has been stolen.
3. Somebody wants you on the phone.
   You want to be on the phone.
4. Somebody has eaten all the bananas.
   All the bananas have been eaten.
5. Somebody will repair the machine.
   The machine will be repaired.
6. Somebody is watching us.
   We are being watched.
7. Somebody has to do the housework.
   The housework has to be done.
27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1 They ___________ (build) a new airport at the moment.
2 These shirts are clean now. They ___________ (wash).
3 ‘How did you fall?’ ‘Somebody ___________ (push) me.’
4 ‘How did you fall?’ ‘I ___________ (push).’
5 I can’t find my bag. Somebody ___________ (take) it!
6 My watch is broken. It ___________ (repair) at the moment.
7 Who ___________ (invent) the camera?
8 When ___________ (the camera/invent)?
9 These shirts are clean now. They ___________ (wash).
10 These shirts are clean now. I ___________ (wash) them.
11 The letter was for me, so why ___________ (they/send) it to you?
12 The information will ___________ (send) to you as soon as possible.

28 Which is the best alternative?

1 We’re having ___________ (B) a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   A We have    B We’re having    C We’ll have
2 Do you know about Karen? ___________ (her) job. She told me last week.
   A She leaves    B She’s going to leave    C She’ll leave
3 There’s a programme on television that I want to watch. ___________ (in five minutes).
   A It starts    B It’s starting    C It will start
4 The weather is nice now, but I think ___________ (later).
   A it rains    B it’s raining    C it will rain
5 ‘What ___________ next weekend?’ ‘Nothing. I’ve got no plans.’
   A do you do    B are you doing    C will you do
6 ‘When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?’ ‘OK, ___________ her.’
   A I ask    B I’m going to ask    C I’ll ask
7 ‘What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?’ ‘Please, ___________ tea, please.’
   A I have    B I’m going to have    C I’ll have
8 Don’t take that newspaper away. ___________ (it).
   A I read    B I’m going to read    C I’ll read
9 Rachel is ill, so ___________ (to the party tomorrow night).
   A she doesn’t come    B she isn’t coming    C she won’t come
10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time ___________ ?
    A does her train arrive    B is her train going to arrive    C is her train arriving
11 ‘Will you be at home tomorrow evening?’ ‘No. ___________ .’
    A I go out    B I’m going out    C I’ll go out
12 ___________ you tomorrow? ‘Yes, OK.’
    A Do I phone    B Am I going to phone    C Shall I phone
Complete the sentences.

1. A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?
   B: No, I stayed (I/stay) at home.
   A: What (you/do)?
   B: I watched (I/watch) television.
   A: (you/go) out tomorrow night?
   B: Yes, I’m going (I/go) to the cinema.
   A: Which film (you/see)?
   B: I don’t know (I/not/decide) yet.

2. A: Are you on holiday here?
   B: Yes, we are.
   A: How long (you/be) here?
   B: We arrived (we/arrive) yesterday.
   A: And how long (you/stay)?
   B: Until the end of next week.
   A: And (you/like) it here?
   B: Yes, we have a wonderful time.

3. A: Oh, (I/remember) Karen/phone) while you were out.
   B: She always (she/always/phone) when I’m not here.
   A: (she/leave) a message?
   B: OK, (I/phone) her now.
   A: Do you know her number?
   B: It’s in my address book. (I/get) it for you.

4. A: I’m going (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
   B: Yes, where (you/want) to come with us?
   A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street. (you/eat) there?
   B: Yes, I’ve been there two or three times. In fact I (go) there last night, but I’d love to go again!

5. A: I lost (I/lose) my glasses again.
   B: (you/see) them?
   A: When (you/wear) them now, so where are they?
   B: (you/look) in the kitchen?
   A: No, (I/go) and look now.
Additional exercises

30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time
(1) .......................................................... (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary
school, and (2) .......................................................... (we/sit) next to each other
for the first lesson. (3) .......................................................... (we/not/know) any
other students in our class, and so (4) .......................................................... (we/become)
friends. We found that (5) .......................................................... (we/like) the same things,
especially music and sport, and so (6) .......................................................... (we/spend)
a lot of time together.

(7) .......................................................... (we/leave) school five years ago, but
(8) .......................................................... (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six
months Carolyn (9) .......................................................... (be) in Mexico – at the
moment (10) .......................................................... (she/work) in a school as a teaching
assistant. (11) .......................................................... (she/come) back to England next
month, and when (12) .......................................................... (she/come) back,
(13) .......................................................... (we/have) lots of things to talk about.
(14) .......................................................... (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick
and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mum and Dad
We’re in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world
trip! (1) .......................................................... We arrived (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now
(2) .......................................................... (we/stay) at a hotel near the
airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) ..........................................................
(we/enjoy) it. (4) .......................................................... (we/watch)
some films and (5) .......................................................... (sleep) a few hours,
which is unusual for me – usually (6) ..........................................................
(I/not/sleep) well on planes.
Today is a rest day for us and (7) ..........................................................
(we/not/do) anything special, but tomorrow
(8) .......................................................... (we/go) to Hollywood
(9) .......................................................... (see) the film studios.
(10) .......................................................... (we/not/decide) yet
what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) ..........................................................
(want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I’d prefer
(12) .......................................................... (go) south to San Diego.
I hope all is well with you – (13) ..........................................................
(I/send)
you another email next week.
Love
Nick
Dear Nick
Thanks for your mail. It’s good to hear that (14) (you/have) a good time. We’re fine – Ellie and Jo (15) (work) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He’s a little tired – I think (17) (he/need) a good holiday.
Keep in touch!
Love
Mum

A month later …

Hi Mum and Dad
(18) (we/be) in California for a month now. (19) (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) (see) many wonderful places. I think the place (21) (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it’s beautiful there and (22) (we/go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) (we/leave), Jon (24) (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) (damage).
(27) (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday).
(29) (we/stay) there for a week before (30) (fly) to New Zealand. (31) (that/be) different, I’m sure!
All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.
Love
Nick

Hi Nick
Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) (I/let) you know when (34) (we/get) the results.
We’re all OK. Dad and I (35) (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) (we/send) you an email from there.
Take care!
Love
Mum
Additional exercises

- **ing and to ...**

**Units 51–55, 105, 112**

32 Which is correct?

1. Don't forget **to switch** (B) off the light before you go out.
   A switch  B to switch  C switching

2. It's late. I must ________________ now.
   A go  B to go  C going

3. I'm sorry, but I haven't got time ________________ to you now.
   A for talking  B to talk  C talking

4. Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys ________________.
   A cook  B to cook  C cooking

5. We've decided ________________ away for a few days.
   A go  B to go  C going

6. You're making too much noise. Can you please stop ________________?
   A shout  B to shout  C shouting

7. Would you like ________________ to dinner on Sunday?
   A come  B to come  C coming

8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me ________________ you.
   A help  B to help  C helping

9. There's a swimming pool near my house. I go ________________ every day.
   A to swim  B to swimming  C swimming

10. Did you use a dictionary ________________ the letter?
    A to translate  B for translating  C for translate

11. I'd love ________________ a car like yours.
    A have  B to have  C having

12. Could you ________________ me with this bag, please?
    A help  B to help  C helping

13. I don't mind ________________ here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
    A sit  B to sit  C sitting

14. Do you want ________________ you?
    A that I help  B me to help  C me helping

15. I usually read the newspaper before ________________ work.
    A start  B to start  C starting

16. I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me ________________ better.
    A feel  B to feel  C feeling

17. Shall I phone the restaurant ________________ a table?
    A for reserve  B for reserving  C to reserve

18. Tom looked at me without ________________ anything.
    A say  B saying  C to say
33 **Complete the sentences.**

1. Can you pass **the sugar**, please?

2. Have you got ___________?

3. Have you got any milk?

   Yes, there's some in ___________.

4. What do you do?

   I'm ___________.

5. I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to ___________.

6. What did you do last night?

   I went to ___________.

7. Shall we walk home?

   No, let's get ___________.

8. Can you play ___________?

   Yes, but not very well.

9. I'm interested in ___________.

10. What's the difference between those cars?

    Nothing, they're ___________.
Additional exercises

34 Write a/an or the if necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

1 Who is ________ best player in your team?
2 I don't watch ________ television very often.
3 ‘Is there ________ bank near here?’ ‘Yes, at ________ end of this street.’
4 I can't ride ________ horse.
5 ________ sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here, or are you ________ tourist?
7 What did you have for ________ lunch?
8 Who was ________ first President of ________ United States?
9 ‘What time is it?’ ‘I don't know. I haven't got ________ watch.’
10 I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember ________ names.
11 What time is ________ next train to London?
12 Kate never sends ________ emails. She prefers to phone people.
13 ‘Where's Sue?’ ‘She's in ________ garden.’
14 Excuse me, I'm looking for ________ Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Gary was ill ________ last week, so he didn't go to ________ work.
16 Everest is ________ highest mountain in ________ world.
17 I usually listen to ________ radio while I'm having ________ breakfast.
18 I like ________ sport. My favourite sport is ________ basketball.
19 Julia is ________ doctor. Her husband is ________ art teacher.
20 My apartment is on ________ second floor. Turn left at ________ top of ________ stairs, and it's on ________ right.
21 After ________ dinner, we watched ________ television.
22 Last year we had ________ wonderful holiday in ________ south of ________ France.

35 Write a preposition (in/for/by etc.).

1 Helen is studying law ________ university.
2 What is the longest river ________ Europe?
3 Is there anything ________ television this evening?
4 We arrived ________ the hotel after midnight.
5 ‘Where's Mike?’ ‘He's ________ holiday.’
6 Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still ________ bed.
7 Lisa is away. She's been away ________ Monday.
8 The next meeting is ________ 15 April.
9 I usually go to work ________ car.
10 There's too much sugar ________ my coffee.
11 Kevin lived in London ________ six months. He didn't like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people ________ the party?
13 What are you doing ________ the moment? Are you working?
14 I don't know any of the people ________ this photograph.
15 The train was very slow. It stopped ________ every station.
16 I like this room. I like the pictures ________ the walls.
17 ‘Did you buy that picture?’ ‘No, it was given to me ________ a friend of mine.’
18 I'm going away ________ a few days. I'll be back ________ Thursday.
19 Silvia has gone ________ Italy. She's ________ Milan at the moment.
20 Emma left school ________ fifteen and got a job ________ a shop.
If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don’t know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 314.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th></th>
<th>STUDY UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>A I cold B I'm cold C I have cold D It has cold</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>A isn't interested B not interested C doesn't interested D doesn't interest</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>A Is at home your mother B Does your mother at home C Is your mother at home D Are your mother at home</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>A How much are they? B How many are they? C How much they are? D How much is they?</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>A She wearing B She has wearing C She is wearing D She's wearing</td>
<td>3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>A I'm not watching B I'm not watching C I not watching D I don't watching</td>
<td>3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>A Is working Paul B Is work Paul C Is Paul work D Is Paul working</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>A Where she is going? B Where she go? C Where's she going? D Where she going?</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>A going B go C goes D does go E is go</td>
<td>5, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>A often go B go often C often going D are often go</td>
<td>5, 23, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>A not watch B doesn't watch C don't watch D don't watching E watch not</td>
<td>6, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>A Do you work B Are you work C Does you work D Do you working E Work you</td>
<td>7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>A mean this word B means this word C does mean this word D does this word mean E this word means</td>
<td>7, 23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

1.14 Please be quiet.  
   A I working.  B I work.  C I’m working.  D I’m work.  

1.15 Tom  
   A has  B having  C is having  D have  

1.16 What  
   A do you usually  B are you usually doing  C are you usually do  
   D do you usually do  E do you usually  

1.17 Sarah isn’t feeling well.  
   A She have  B She have got  C She has  D She’s got  

1.18 Tracey and Jeff  
   A don’t have  B doesn’t have  C no have  D haven’t got  E hasn’t got  

Past

2.1 The weather  
   A is good  B was good  C were good  D good  E had good  

2.2 Why  
   A you was  B did you  C was you  D you were  E were you  

2.3 Terry  
   A work  B working  C works  D worked  E was work  

2.4 Caroline  
   A go  B went  C goes  D got  E was  

2.5 I  
   A didn’t watch  B didn’t watched  C wasn’t watched  D don’t watch  
   E didn’t watching  

2.6 ‘How  
   A happened the accident  B did happen the accident  
   C does the accident happen  D did the accident happen  
   E the accident happened  

2.7 What  
   A were you doing  B was you doing  C you were doing  D were you do  
   E you was doing  

2.8 Jack was reading a book when the phone  
   A ringing  B ring  C rang  D was ringing  E was ring  

2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They  
   A waiting  B waited  C were waiting  D was waiting  E were waited  

Present perfect

3.1 ‘Where’s Rebecca?’ ‘  
   A She is gone  B She has gone  C She goes  D She have gone  
   E She’s gone  

3.2 ‘Are Diane and Paul here?’ ‘No, they  
   A don’t arrive yet  B have already arrived  C haven’t already arrived  
   D haven’t arrived yet
3.3 My sister ________ by plane.
   A has never travel  B has never travelled  C is never travelled
   D has never been travelled  E have never travelled

3.4 ________ that woman before, but I can’t remember where.
   A I see  B I seen  C I’ve saw  D I’ve seen  E I’ve seeing

3.5 ‘How long ________ married?’ ‘Since 1998.’
   A you are  B you have been  C has you been  D are you
   E have you been

3.6 ‘Do you know Lisa?’ ‘Yes, ________ her for a long time.’
   A I knew  B I’ve known  C I know  D I am knowing

3.7 Richard has been in Canada ________.
   A for six months  B since six months  C six months ago  D in six months

3.8 ‘When did Tom go out?’ ________
   A For ten minutes.  B Since ten minutes.  C Ten minutes ago.
   D In ten minutes.

3.9 We ________ a holiday last year.
   A don’t have  B haven’t had  C hasn’t had  D didn’t have
   E didn’t had

3.10 Where ________ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn’t find you.
   A you were  B you have been  C was you  D have you been
   E were you

Passive

4.1 This house ________ 100 years ago.
   A is built  B is building  C was building  D was built  E built

4.2 We ________ to the party last week.
   A didn’t invite  B didn’t invited  C weren’t invited  D wasn’t invited
   E haven’t been invited

4.3 ‘Where ________ born?’ ‘In Cairo.’
   A you are  B you were  C was you  D are you  E were you

4.4 My car is at the garage. It ________.
   A is being repaired  B is repairing  C have been repaired  D repaired
   E repairs

4.5 I can’t find my keys. I think ________.
   A they’ve been stolen  B they are stolen  C they’ve stolen
   D they’re being stolen

Verb forms

5.1 It ________, so we didn’t need an umbrella.
   A wasn’t rained  B wasn’t rain  C didn’t raining  D wasn’t raining

5.2 Somebody ________ this window.
   A has broke  B has broken  C has breaked  D has break
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

**Future**

6.1 Andrew ___________ tennis tomorrow.
   A is playing  B play  C plays  D is play

6.2 ___________ out tonight?
   A Are you going  B Are you go  C Do you go  D Go you
   E Do you going

6.3 ‘What time is the concert tonight?’ ‘It ___________ at 7.30.’
   A is start  B is starting  C starts  D start  E starting

6.4 What ___________ to the wedding next week?
   A are you wearing  B are you going to wear  C do you wear
   D you are going to wear

6.5 I think Kelly ___________ the exam.
   A passes  B will pass  C will be pass  D will passing

6.6 ___________ to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us?
   A We go  B We’ll go  C We’re going  D We will going

6.7 ‘___________ you tomorrow, OK?’ ‘OK, bye.’
   A I phone  B I phoning  C I’m phoning  D I’ll phone

6.8 There’s a good film on TV tonight. ___________ it.
   A I watch  B I’ll watch  C I’m going to watch  D I’ll watching

6.9 It’s a nice day. ___________ for a walk?
   A Do we go  B Shall we go  C Are we go  D We go  E Go we

**Modals, imperative etc.**

7.1 ___________ to the cinema this evening, but I’m not sure.
   A I’ll go  B I’m going  C I may go  D I might go

7.2 ‘___________ here?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
   A Can I sit  B Do I sit  C May I sit  D Can I to sit

7.3 I’m having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel ___________.
   A can’t come  B can’t to come  C can’t coming  D couldn’t come

7.4 Before Maria came to Britain, she ___________ understand much English.
   A can  B can’t  C not  D couldn’t  E doesn’t

7.5 We ___________ walk home last night. There were no buses.
   A have to  B had to  C must  D must to  E must have

7.6 I ___________ go yet. I can stay a little longer.
   A must  B mustn’t  C must not  D don’t need  E don’t need to

7.7 It’s a good film. You ___________ go and see it.
   A should to  B ought to  C ought  D should  E need

7.8 What time ___________ go to the dentist tomorrow?
   A you must  B you have to  C have you to  D do you have to

7.9 We ___________ wait long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.
   A don’t have to  B hadn’t to  C didn’t have to  D didn’t had to  E mustn’t
7.10 ‘________________ some coffee?’ ‘No, thank you.’
A Are you liking  B You like  C Would you like  D Do you like

7.11 Please __________________. Stay here with me.
A don’t go  B you no go  C go not  D you don’t go

7.12 Dave __________________ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.
A working  B works  C worked  D use to work  E used to work

There and it
8.1 Excuse me, __________________ a hotel near here?
A has there  B is there  C there is  D is it

8.2 __________________ a lot of accidents on this road. It’s very dangerous.
A Have  B It has  C There have  D They are  E There are

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but __________________ anything to eat.
A there wasn’t  B there weren’t  C it wasn’t  D there hasn’t been

8.4 __________________ three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
A It’s  B It has  C There is  D There are

8.5 __________________ true that you’re going away?
A Is there  B Is it  C Is  D Are you

Auxiliary verbs
9.1 I haven’t got a car, but my sister __________________.
A have  B is  C has  D hasn’t  E has got

9.2 I don’t like hot weather, but Sue __________________.
A does  B doesn’t  C do  D does like  E likes

9.3 ‘Nicole got married last week.’ ‘________________ Really?’
A Is she?  B Got she?  C Did she?  D Has she?

9.4 You haven’t met my mother, __________________?
A haven’t you  B have you  C did you  D you have  E you haven’t

9.5 Bill doesn’t watch TV. He doesn’t read newspapers __________________.
A too  B either  C neither  D never

9.6 ‘I’d like to go to Australia.’ ‘________________’
A So do I.  B So am I.  C So would I.  D Neither do I.  E So I would.

9.7 Sue __________________ much at weekends.
A don’t  B doesn’t  C don’t do  D doesn’t do

Questions
10.1 ‘When __________________? ’ ‘I’m not sure. More than 100 years ago.’
A did the telephone invent  B has the telephone invented
C was invented the telephone  D was the telephone invented
E the telephone was invented

10.2 ‘I broke my finger last week.’ ‘How __________________ that?’
A did you  B you did  C you did do  D did you do
10.3 Why _____________ me last night? I was waiting for you to phone.
   A didn’t you phone  B you nor phone  C you don’t phone  D you didn’t phone

10.4 ‘Who _____________ in this house?’ ‘I don’t know.’
   A lives  B does live  C does lives  D living

10.5 What _____________ when you told him the story?
   A said Paul  B did Paul say  C Paul said  D did Paul said

10.6 ‘Tom’s father is in hospital.’ ‘_______________’
   A In which hospital he is?  B In which hospital he is in?
   C Which hospital he is in?  D Which hospital is he in?

10.7 Did you have a good holiday? _____________
   A How was the weather like?  B What was the weather like?
   C What the weather was like?  D Was the weather like?

10.8 _____________ taller – Joe or Gary?
   A Who is  B What is  C Which is  D Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. _____________ is yours?
   A What  B Who  C Which  D How  E Which one

10.10 How long _____________ to cross the Atlantic by ship?
      A is it  B does it need  C does it take  D does it want

10.11 I don’t remember what _____________ at the party.
      A Kate was wearing  B was wearing Kate  C was Kate wearing

10.12 ‘Do you know _____________?’ ‘Yes, I think so.’
      A if Jack is at home  B is Jack at home  C whether Jack is at home
      D that Jack is at home

Reported speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that _____________ me, but he didn’t.
      A he phone  B he phones  C he’ll phone  D he’s going to phone
      E he would phone

11.2 ‘Why did Tim go to bed so early?’ ‘He _____________.’
      A said he was tired  B said that he was tired  C said me he was tired
      D told me he was tired  E told that he was tired

-ing and to ...

12.1 You shouldn’t _____________ so hard.
      A working  B work  C to work  D worked

12.2 It’s late. I _____________ now.
      A must to go  B have go  C have to going  D have to go

12.3 Tina has decided _____________ her car.
      A sell  B to sell  C selling  D to selling

12.4 I don’t mind _____________ early.
      A get up  B to get up  C getting up  D to getting up
12.5 Do you like ____________ early?
   A get up  B to get up  C getting up  D to getting up

12.6 Do you want ____________ you some money?
   A me lend  B me lending  C me to lend  D that I lend

12.7 He’s very funny. He makes ____________.
   A me laugh  B me laughing  C me to laugh  D that I laugh

12.8 Paula went to the shop ______________ a newspaper.
   A for get  B for to get  C for getting  D to get  E get

Go, get, do, make and have

13.1 It’s a nice day. Let’s go ______________.
   A for a swim  B on a swim  C to swimming  D swimming

13.2 I’m sorry your mother is ill. I hope she ______________ better soon.
   A has  B makes  C gets  D goes

13.3 Kate ______________ the car and drove away.
   A went into  B went in  C got in  D got into

13.4 ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll ______________ it.’
   A do  B make  C get  D open

13.5 I’m sorry, I ______________ a mistake.
   A did  B made  C got  D had

13.6 ‘________________ a good time in London?’ ‘Yes, I really enjoyed it.’
   A Have you  B Had you  C Do you have  D Did you have

Pronouns and possessives

14.1 I don’t want this book. You can have ______________.
   A it  B them  C her  D him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with ______________?
   A her  B they  C them  D him

14.3 I know Donna, but I don’t know ______________ husband.
   A their  B his  C she  D her

14.4 Oxford is famous for ______________ university.
   A his  B its  C it’s  D their

14.5 I didn’t have an umbrella, so Helen gave me ______________.
   A her  B hers  C her umbrella  D she’s

14.6 I went out to meet a friend of ______________.
   A mine  B my  C me  D I  E myself

14.7 We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ______________.
   A us  B our  C ours  D ourself  E ourselves

14.8 Kate and Helen are good friends. They know ______________ well.
   A each other  B them  C themselves  D theirselves
14.9 Have you met _______________?
   A the wife of Mr Black  B Mr Black wife  C the wife Mr Black
   D Mr Black’s wife  E the Mr Black’s wife
14.10 Have you seen _______________?
   A the car of my parents  B my parent’s car  C my parents’ car
   D my parents car

A and the

15.1 I’m going to buy _______________.
   A hat and umbrella  B a hat and a umbrella  C a hat and an umbrella
   D an hat and an umbrella
15.2 ‘What’s your job?’ ‘______________’
15.3 I’m going shopping. I need _______________.
   A some new jeans  B a new jeans  C a new pair of jeans
   D a new pair jeans
15.4 I like the people here. _______________ very friendly.
   A She is  B They are  C They is  D It is  E He is
15.5 We can’t get into the house without _______________.
   A some key  B a key  C key
15.6 I’d like _______________ about hotels in London.
   A some information  B some informations  C an information
15.7 We enjoyed our holiday. _______________ was very nice.
   A Hotel  B A hotel  C An hotel  D The hotel
15.8 My house is at _______________.
   A end of street  B end of the street  C the end of the street
   D the end of street
15.9 What did you have for _______________?
   A the breakfast  B breakfast  C a breakfast
15.10 I finish _______________ at 5 o’clock every day.
   A the work  B work  C a work
15.11 I’m tired. I’m going _______________.
   A in bed  B in the bed  C to a bed  D to the bed  E to bed
15.12 We don’t eat _______________ very often.
   A the meat  B some meat  C a meat  D meat
15.13 _______________ is in New York.
   A The Times Square  B Times Square
15.14 My friends are staying at _______________.
   A the Regent Hotel  B Regent Hotel
Determiners and pronouns

16.1 ‘I’m going on holiday next week.’ ‘Oh, _________________ nice.’
   A it’s  B this is  C that’s

16.2 ‘Is there a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, there’s _______________ at the end of this street.’
   A some  B it  C one  D a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have _______________?
   A clean one  B a clean one  C clean  D a clean

16.4 I’m going shopping. I’m going to buy _______________ clothes.
   A any  B some

16.5 ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I haven’t got _______________.’
   A one  B some  C any

16.6 Tracey and Jeff _______________.
   A have got no children  B haven’t got no children  C haven’t got any children
   D have got any children

16.7 ‘How much money have you got?’ _______________.

16.8 There is _______________ in the room. It’s empty.
   A anybody  B nobody  C anyone  D no-one

16.9 ‘What did you say?’ _______________.

16.10 I’m hungry. I want _______________.
   A something for eat  B something to eat  C something for eating

16.11 Bill watches TV for about two hours _______________.
   A all evening  B all evenings  C all the evenings  D every evenings
   E every evening

16.12 _______________ friends.
   A Everybody need  B Everybody needs  C Everyone need  D Everyone needs

16.13 _______________ children like playing.
   A Most  B The most  C Most of  D The most of

16.14 I like _______________ those pictures.
   A both  B both of  C either  D either of

16.15 I haven’t read _______________ these books.
   A neither  B neither of  C either  D either of

16.16 Have you got _______________ friends?
   A a lot of  B much  C many  D much of  E many of

16.17 We like films, so we go to the cinema _______________.
   A a lot of  B much  C many  D a lot

16.18 There were _______________ people in the theatre. It was nearly empty.
   A a little  B few  C little  D a few of

16.19 They have _______________ money, so they’re not poor.
   A a little  B a few  C few  D little  E little of
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Adjectives and adverbs
17.1 I don't speak any ________________ .  
    A foreign languages    B languages foreign    C languages foreigns
17.2 He ate his dinner very ________________ .  
    A quick    B quicker    C quickly
17.3 You speak English very ________________ .  
    A good    B fluent    C well    D slow
17.4 Helen wants ________________ .  
    A a more big car    B a car more big    C a car bigger    D a bigger car
17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel ________________ .'  
    A good    B worse    C more bad    D more worse
17.6 Athens is older ________________ Rome.  
    A as    B than    C that    D of
17.7 I can run faster ________________ .  
    A than him    B that he can    C than he can    D as he can    E as he
17.8 Tennis isn't ________________ football.  
    A popular as    B popular than    C as popular than    D so popular that    E as popular as
17.9 The weather today is the same ________________ yesterday.  
    A as    B that    C than    D like
17.10 The Europa Hotel is ________________ in the city.  
    A the more expensive hotel    B the most expensive hotel    C the hotel most expensive    D the hotel the more expensive    E the hotel more expensive
17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the ________________ film I've ever seen.  
    A worse    B baddest    C most bad    D worst    E more worse
17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got ________________ .  
    A enough money    B money enough    C enough of money
17.13 Is your English ________________ a conversation?  
    A enough good to have    B good enough for have    C enough good for    D good enough to have
17.14 I'm ________________ out.  
    A too tired for go    B too much tired for going    C too tired to go    D too much tired to go

Word order
18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She ________________ .  
    A reads every day a newspaper    B reads a newspaper every day    C every day reads a newspaper
18.2 ________________ coffee in the morning.  
    A I drink always    B Always I drink    C I always drink
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

18.3 during the day.  
A They are at home never  B They are never at home  
C They never are at home  D Never they are at home

18.4 ‘Where’s Emma?’ ‘She ’.  
A isn’t here yet  B isn’t here already  C isn’t here still

18.5 I locked the door and I gave .  
A Sarah the keys  B to Sarah the keys  C the keys Sarah  
D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when more time.  
A I’ll have  B I had  C I have  D I’m going to have

19.2 late this evening, don’t wait for me.  
A If I’m  B If I’ll be  C When I’m  D When I’ll be

19.3 I don’t know the answer. If I the answer, I’d tell you.  
A know  B would know  C have known  D knew

19.4 I like this jacket. it if it wasn’t so expensive.  
A I buy  B I’ll buy  C I bought  D I’d bought  E I’d buy

19.5 Emma lives in a house is 400 years old.  
A who  B that  C which  D it  E what

19.6 The people work in the office are very friendly.  
A who  B that  C they  D which  E what

19.7 Did you find the book ?  
A who you wanted  B that you wanted  C what you wanted  
D you wanted  E you wanted it

19.8 I met can speak six languages.  
A a woman who  B a woman which  C a woman  D a woman she

Prepositions

20.1 Bye! I’ll see you .  
A until Friday  B at Friday  C in Friday  D on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves five minutes.  
A at  B on  C from  D after  E in

20.3 ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘ Monday.’  
A On  B To  C Until  D Till  E Since

20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played two hours.  
A in  B for  C since  D during

20.5 I always have breakfast before to work.  
A I go  B go  C to go  D going

20.6 Write your name the top of the page.  
A at  B on  C in  D to
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

20.7 There are a lot of apples ________________ those trees.
   A at B on C in D to

20.8 What's the largest city ________________ the world?
   A at B on C in D of

20.9 The office is ________________ the first floor.
   A at B on C in D to

20.10 I met a lot of people ________________ the party.
     A on B to C in D at

20.11 I want to go ________________ Italy next year.
     A at B on C in D to

20.12 What time did you arrive ________________ the hotel?
     A at B on C in D to

20.13 ‘Where is David in this picture?’ ‘He's ________________ Barbara.’
     A at front of B in front of C in front of D in front from

20.14 I jumped ________________ the wall into the garden.
     A on B through C across D over E above

20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's ________________ holiday.
     A on B in C for D to E at

20.16 Do you like travelling ________________?
     A with train B with the train C in train D on train E by train

20.17 I'm not very good ________________ telling stories.
     A on B with C at D in E for

20.18 Tom left without ________________ goodbye.
     A say B saying C to say D that he said

20.19 I'm going to phone ________________ this evening.
     A with my parents B to my parents C at my parents D my parents

20.20 ‘Do you like eating in restaurants?’ ‘It depends ________________ the restaurant.’
     A in B at C of D on E over

Phrasal verbs

21.1 The car stopped and a woman got ________________.
     A off B down C out D out of

21.2 It was cold, so I ________________.
     A put on my coat B put my coat on C put the coat on me D put me the coat on

21.3 I’ve got Rachel’s keys. I have to ________________ to her.
     A give back B give them back C give back them D give it back
UNIT 1

1. they're
2. it isn't / it's not
3. that's
4. I'm not
5. you aren't / you're not

1.2
2. 'm/am 6 are
3. is 7 is ... are
4. are 8 'm/am ... is
5. 's/is

1.3
2. I'm / I am
3. He's / He is
4. they're / they are
5. It's / It is
6. You're / You are
7. She's / She is
8. Here's / Here is

1.4
Example answers:
1. My name is Robert.
2. I'm from Australia.
3. I'm 25.
4. I'm a gardener.
5. My favourite colours are black and white.
6. I'm interested in plants.

1.5
2. They're / They are cold.
3. He's / He is hot.
4. He's / He is afraid.
5. They're / They are hungry.
6. She's / She is angry.

1.6
2. It's / It is windy today, or
   It isn't / It's not windy today.
3. My hands are cold, or
   My hands aren't / are not cold.
4. Brazil is a very big country.
5. Diamonds aren't / are not cheap.
6. Toronto isn't / is not in the US.
7. I'm / I am hungry, or
   I'm not / I am not hungry.

UNIT 2

2.1
2. F 6 E
3. H 7 B
4. C 8 I
5. A 9 D

2.2
3. Is your job interesting?
4. Are the shops open today?
5. Where are you from?
6. Are you interested in sport?
7. Is the post office near here?
8. Are your children at school?
9. Why are you late?

2.3
2. Where's / Where is
3. How old are
4. How much are
5. What's / What is
6. Who's / Who is
7. What colour are

2.4
2. Are you American?
3. How old are you?
4. Are you a teacher?
5. Are you married?
6. Is your wife a lawyer?
7. Where's / Where is she from?
8. What's / What is her name?
9. How old is she?

2.5
2. Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
3. Yes, it is. or
   No, it isn't / No, it's not.
4. Yes, they are. or
   No, they aren't / No, they're not.
5. Yes, it is. or
   No, it isn't / No, it's not.
6. Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

UNIT 3

3.1
2. 's/is waiting
3. 're / are playing
4. He's / He is lying
5. They're / They are having
6. She's / She is sitting

3.2
2. 's/is cooking
3. 're / are standing
4. 's/is swimming
5. 're / are staying
6. 's/is having
7. 're / are building
8. 'm/am going

3.3
2. She's / She is sitting on the floor.
3. She isn't / She's not reading a book.
4. She isn't / She's not playing the piano.
5. She's / She is laughing.
6. She's / She is wearing a hat.
7. She's / She is not writing a letter.

3.4
2. I'm sitting on a chair. or
   I'm not sitting on a chair.
3. I'm eating. or
   I'm not eating.
4. It's raining. or
   It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
5. I'm learning English.
6. I'm listening to music. or
   I'm not listening to music.
7. The sun is shining. or
   The sun isn't shining.
8. I'm wearing shoes. or
   I'm not wearing shoes.
9. I'm not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1
2. Are you going now?
3. Is it raining?
4. Are you enjoying the film?
5. Is that clock working?
6. Are you waiting for a bus?
Key to Exercises

4.2
2 Where is she going?
3 What are you eating?
4 Why are you crying?
5 What are they looking at?
6 Why is he laughing?

4.3
3 Are you listening to me?
4 Where are your friends going?
5 Are your parents watching television?
6 What is Jessica cooking?
7 Why are you looking at me?
8 Is the bus coming?

4.4
2 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
3 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn’t. / No, it’s not.
5 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
6 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.

UNIT 5

5.1
2 thinks 5 has
3 flies 6 finishes
4 dances

5.2
2 live 5 They go
3 She eats 6 He sleeps
4 He plays

5.3
2 open 7 costs
3 closes 8 cost
4 teaches 9 boils
5 meet 10 like ... likes
6 washes

5.4
2 I never go to the cinema.
3 Martina always works hard.
4 Children usually like chocolate.
5 Julia always enjoys parties.
6 I often forget people’s names.
7 Tim never watches television.
8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.
9 Jenny always wears nice clothes.

5.5
Example answers:
2 I sometimes read in bed.
3 I usually get up before 7 o’clock.
4 I never go to work by bus.
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1
2 Jane doesn’t play the piano very well.
3 They don’t know my phone number.
4 We don’t work very hard.
5 He doesn’t have a bath every day.
6 You don’t do the same thing every day.

6.2
2 Kate doesn’t like classical music.
   I like (or I don’t like) classical music.
3 Ben and Sophie don’t like boxing.
   Kate likes boxing.
   I like (or I don’t like) boxing.
4 Ben and Sophie like horror films.
   Kate doesn’t like horror films.
   I like (or I don’t like) horror films.

6.3
Example answers:
2 I never go to the theatre.
3 I don’t ride a bicycle very often.
4 I never eat in restaurants.
5 I often travel by train.

6.4
2 doesn’t use
3 don’t go
4 doesn’t wear
5 don’t know
6 doesn’t cost
7 don’t see

6.5
3 don’t know
4 doesn’t talk
5 drinks
6 don’t believe
7 like
8 doesn’t eat

UNIT 7

7.1
2 Do you play tennis?
3 Does Lucy live near here?
4 Do Tom’s friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
6 Do you do yoga every morning?
7 Does Paul often go away? / Does he often go away?
8 Do you want to be famous?
9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2
3 How often do you watch TV?
4 What do you want for dinner?
5 Do you like football?
6 Does your brother like football?
7 What do you do in your free time?
8 Where does your sister work?
9 Do you often go to the cinema?
10 What does this word mean?
11 Does it often snow here?
12 What time do you usually go to bed?
13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3
2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
3 do you start
4 Do you work
5 do you go
6 does he do
7 does he teach
8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4
2 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
3 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn’t.
5 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
UNIT 8

8.1
2 No, she isn't. Yes, she does. She's playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does. Yes, he is. He's cleaning a window.
4 No, they aren't. Yes, they do. They teach.

8.2
2 don't 6 do
3 are 7 does
4 does 8 doesn't
5 s/is ... don't

8.3
4 is singing
5 She wants
6 do you read
7 you're sitting
8 I don't understand
9 I'm going ... Are you coming
10 does your father finish
11 I'm not listening
12 He's/He is cooking
13 doesn't usually drive ... usually walks
14 doesn't like ... She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1
2 he's got
3 they've got
4 she hasn't got
5 it's got
6 I haven't got

9.2
2 He's got a computer. or He has a computer.
3 He hasn't got a dog. or He doesn't have a dog.
4 He hasn't got a mobile phone. or He doesn't have a mobile phone.
5 He's got a watch. or He has a watch.
6 He's got two brothers and a sister. or He has two brothers and a sister.
7 I've got a computer. / I have a computer. or I haven't got a computer. / I don't have a computer.

UNIT 10

10.1
2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.
6 (Example answer) I was at work.

10.2
2 is ... was 6 're/are
3 'm/am 7 Was
4 was 8 was
5 were 9 are ... were

10.3
2 wasn't ... was
3 was ... were
4 'Weren't Kate and Bill at the party?' 'Kate was there, but Bill wasn't.' or 'Kate wasn't there, but Bill was.'
5 were
6 weren't ... were

10.4
2 Was your exam difficult?
3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?
4 How much was your new camera?
5 Why were you angry yesterday?
6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1
2 opened
3 started ... finished
4 wanted
5 happened
6 rained
7 enjoyed ... stayed
8 died

11.2
2 saw 8 thought
3 played 9 copied
4 paid 10 knew
5 visited 11 put
6 bought 12 spoke
7 went

11.3
2 got 9 checked
3 had 10 had
4 left 11 waited
5 drove 12 departed
6 got 13 arrived
7 parked 14 took
8 walked
UNIT 12
12.1
2 didn’t work 4 didn’t have
3 didn’t go 5 didn’t do

UNIT 13
13.1
2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
3 Tim was in his car. He was driving.
4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6 (Example answer) I was in a café. I was having a drink with some friends.

UNIT 14
14.1
1 happened … was painting … fell
2 arrived … got … were waiting
3 was walking … met … was going … was carrying … stopped

UNIT 15
15.1
2 She has/She’s closed the door.
3 They have/They’ve gone to bed.
4 It has/It’s stopped raining.
5 He has/He’s had a shower.
6 The picture has fallen down.

UNIT 16
16.1
2 He’s/He has just got up.
3 They’ve/They have just bought a car.
4 The race has just started.

UNIT 13
13.2
2 she was playing tennis
3 she was reading a/the newspaper
4 she was cooking (lunch)
5 she was having breakfast
6 she was cleaning the kitchen

UNIT 15
15.2
2 ’ve bought / have bought
3 ’s gone / has gone
4 Have you seen
5 has broken
6 ’ve told / have told
7 has taken
8 haven’t seen
9 has she gone
10 ’ve forgotten / have forgotten
11 ’s invited / has invited
12 Have you decided
13 haven’t told
14 ’ve read / have read

UNIT 14
14.2
2 was studying
3 did the post arrive … came … was having
4 didn’t go
5 were you driving … stopped … wasn’t driving

UNIT 15
15.3
2 What were you doing
3 Was it raining
4 Why was Sue driving
5 Was Tim wearing

UNIT 16
16.2
2 they’ve/they have already seen it.
3 I’ve/I have already phoned him.
4 He’s/He has already gone (away).
5 I’ve/I have already read it.
6 She’s/She has already started (it).

UNIT 14
14.3
2 He was carrying a bag.
3 He wasn’t going to the dentist.
4 He was eating an ice-cream.
5 He wasn’t carrying an umbrella.
6 He wasn’t going home.
7 He was wearing a hat.
8 He wasn’t riding a bicycle.

UNIT 15
15.4
2 ‘ve bought / have bought
3 ’s gone / has gone
4 Have you seen
5 has broken
6 ’ve told / have told
7 has taken
8 haven’t seen
9 has she gone
10 ’ve forgotten / have forgotten
11 ’s invited / has invited
12 Have you decided
13 haven’t told
14 ’ve read / have read
5 They've/They have just finished their dinner.
6 It hasn't stopped raining yet.

16.4
2 Have you met your new neighbours yet?
3 Have you paid your phone bill yet?
4 Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

UNIT 17

17.1
3 Have you ever been to Australia?
4 Have you ever lost your passport?
5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6 Have you ever won a race?
7 Have you ever been to New York?
8 Have you ever driven a bus?
9 Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2
Helen:
2 She's/She has been to Australia once.
3 She's/She has never won a race.
4 She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.
You (example answers):
5 I've/I have never been to New York.
6 I've/I have played tennis many times.
7 I've/I have never driven a lorry.
8 I've/have been late for work a few times.

17.3
2–6 She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.
She's/She has travelled all over the world. or
She's/She has been all over the world.
She's/She has been married three times.
She's/She has written ten books.
She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4
2 gone
3 been ... been
4 been
5 gone
6 been
7 been
8 gone

UNIT 18

18.1
3 have been
4 has been
5 have lived / have been living
6 has worked / has been working
7 has had
8 have been learning

18.2
2 How long have they been there? or ... been in Brazil?
3 How long have you known her? or ... known Amy?
4 How long has she been learning Italian?
5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ... ?
6 How long have you been a teacher?
7 How long has it been raining?

18.3
2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
4 The sun has been shining all day.
5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4
2 I know
3 I've known
4 have you been waiting
5 works
6 She has been reading
7 have you lived
8 I've had
9 is ... He has been

UNIT 19

19.1
3 for 6 for
4 since 7 for
5 since 8 for ... since

19.2
Example answers:
2 A year ago.
3 A few weeks ago.
4 Two hours ago.
5 Six months ago.

19.3
3 for 20 years
4 20 years ago
5 an hour ago
6 a few days ago
7 for six months
8 for a long time

19.4
2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3 It's been raining for an hour.
4 I've known Sue since 2002.
5 Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
6 Liz has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5
Example answers:
1 I've lived in ... all my life.
2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
3 I've been learning English for six months.
4 I've known Chris for a long time.
5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20

20.1
2 I started (it)
3 they arrived
4 she went (away)
5 I wore it
Key to Exercises

20.2
3 I finished
4 OK
5 did you finish
6 OK
7 (Steve's grandmother) died
8 Where were you / Where did you go

20.3
3 played
4 did you go
5 Have you ever met
6 wasn't
7 's/has visited
8 switched
9 lived
10 haven't been

20.4
1 Did you have was
2 Have you seen went
haven't seen
3 has worked / has been working
was worked
didn't enjoy
4 've/have been
've/have never spoken
Have you ever spoken met

UNIT 21

21.1
3 Glass is made from sand.
4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
5 This room isn't used very often.
6 Are we allowed to park here?
7 How is this word pronounced?
9 The house was painted last month.
10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11 Three people were injured in the accident.
12 When was this bridge built?
13 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
14 How were these windows broken?
15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

21.2
2 Football is played in most ...
3 Why was the letter sent to ...
4 ... where cars are repaired.
5 Where were you born?
6 How many languages are spoken ...
7 ... but nothing was stolen.
8 When was the bicycle invented?

21.3
3 is made
4 were damaged
5 was given
6 are shown
7 were invited
8 was made
9 was stolen ... was found

21.4
2 Sally was born in Manchester.
3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 I was born in ...
5 My mother was born in ...

UNIT 22

22.1
2 A bridge is being built.
3 The windows are being cleaned.
4 The grass is being cut.

22.2
3 The window has been broken.
4 The roof is being repaired.
5 The car has been damaged.
6 The houses are being knocked down.
7 The trees have been cut down.
8 They have been invited to a party.

22.3
3 has been repaired
4 was repaired
5 are made
6 were they built?
7 Is the computer being used (or Is anybody using the computer)

UNIT 23

23.1
3 8 are
4 Does 8 is
5 Do 9 does
6 Is 10 Are

23.2
2 don't
3 'm/am not
4 isn't
5 don't
6 doesn't
7 'm/am not
8 aren't / 're not

23.3
2 Did 7 were
3 were 8 Has
4 was 9 did
5 Has 10 have
6 did

23.4
2 was 6 've/have
3 Have 7 is
4 are 8 was
5 were 9 has

23.5
3 eaten 8 understand
4 enjoying 9 listening
5 damaged 10 pronounced
6 use 11 open
7 gone

UNIT 24

24.1
3 got 10 happened
4 brought 11 heard
5 paid 12 put
6 enjoyed 13 caught
7 bought 14 watched
8 sat 15 understood
9 left

24.2
2 began begun
3 ate eaten
4 drank drunk
5 drove driven
6 spoke spoken
7 wrote written
8 came come
9 knew known
10 took taken
24.3
3 slept
4 saw
5 rained
6 lost ... seen
7 stolen
8 went
9 finished
10 built
11 learnt/learned
12 ridden
13 known
14 fell ... hurt
15 ran ... run

24.4
2 told
3 won
4 met
5 woken up
6 swam
7 thought
8 spoken
9 cost
10 driven
11 sold
12 flew

UNIT 25

25.1
2 Richard is going to the cinema.
3 Rachel is meeting Dave.
4 Karen is having lunch with Ken.
5 Tom and Sue are going to a party.

25.2
2 Are you working next week?
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
4 What time are your friends coming?
5 When is Liz going on holiday?

Example answers:
3 I'm going to phone Maria this evening.
4 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
5 I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 26

26.1
2 I'm going to have a bath.
3 I'm going to buy a car.
4 We're going to play football.

26.2
3 'm/am going to walk
4 's/is going to stay
5 'm/am going to eat
6 're/are going to give
7 's/is going to lie down
8 Are you going to watch?
9 is Rachel going to do

Example answers:
1 I'm going to phone Maria this evening.
2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
3 I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 27

27.1
2 she'll be
3 she was
4 she'll be

Example answers:
2 I'll be at home.
3 I'll probably be in bed.
4 I'll be at work.
5 I don't know where I'll be.

UNIT 26

26.3
2 The shelf is going to fall (down).
3 The car is going to turn (right).
4 He's / He is going to kick the ball.

UNIT 28

28.1
2 I'll send
3 I'll eat
4 I'll sit

Example answers:
2 I'll send
3 I'll eat
4 I'll sit
7 I'll show

28.2
2 I think I'll have
3 I don't think I'll play
4 I think I'll buy
5 I don't think I'll buy

28.3
2 I'll do
3 I watch
4 I'll go
5 is going to buy
6 I'll give

Example answers:
2 Shall I turn off the television?
3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
4 Shall I turn on the light?

28.4
2 where shall we go?
3 what shall we buy?
4 who shall we invite?
UNIT 29

29.1
2 I might see you tomorrow.
3 Sarah might forget to phone.
4 It might snow today.
5 I might be late tonight.
6 Mark might not be here next week.
7 I might not have time to go out.

29.2
2 I might go away.
3 I might see her on Monday.
4 I might have fish.
5 I might get/take a taxi or go by taxi.
6 I might buy a new car.

29.3
3 He might get up early.
4 He isn’t/He’s not working tomorrow.
5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
6 He might watch television.
7 He’s going out in the afternoon.
8 He might go shopping.

29.4
Example answers:
1 I might read a newspaper.
2 I might go out with some friends in the evening.
3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 30

30.1
2 Can you ski?
3 Can you play chess?
4 Can you run ten kilometres?
5 Can you drive (a car)?
6 Can you ride (a horse)?
7 I can/can’t swim.
8 I can/can’t ski.
9 I can/can’t play chess.
10 I can/can’t run ten kilometres.
11 I can/can’t drive (a car).
12 I can/can’t ride (a horse).

30.2
2 can see 4 can’t find
3 can’t hear 5 can speak

30.3
2 couldn’t eat
3 can’t decide
4 couldn’t find
5 can’t go
6 couldn’t go

30.4
2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
3 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
4 Can/Could I have your phone number (please)?
5 Can/Could I look at your newspaper (please)? or Can/Could I have a look at your newspaper (please)?
6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 31

31.1
2 must meet
3 must wash
4 must learn
5 must go
6 must win
7 must be

31.2
2 I must 5 I had to
3 I had to 6 I had to
4 I must 7 I must

31.3
2 don’t need to hurry
3 mustn’t lose
4 don’t need to wait
5 mustn’t forget
6 don’t need to phone

31.4
2 C 4 B
3 A 5 D

31.5
3 don’t need to
4 had to
5 must
6 mustn’t
7 must
8 had to
9 don’t need to
10 mustn’t

UNIT 32

32.1
2 You should go
3 You should eat
4 you should visit
5 you should wear
6 You should take

32.2
2 He shouldn’t eat so much.
3 She shouldn’t work so hard.
4 He shouldn’t drive so fast.

32.3
2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3 Do you think I should get another job?
4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

32.4
3 I think you should sell it.
4 I think she should have a holiday.
5 I don’t think they should get married.
6 I don’t think you should go to work.
7 I think he should go to the doctor.
8 I don’t think we should stay there.

32.5
Example answers:
2 I think everybody should have enough food.
3 I think people should drive more carefully.
4 I don’t think the police should carry guns.
5 I think I should take more exercise.

UNIT 33

33.1
2 have to do
3 has to read
4 have to speak
5 has to travel
6 have to hit

33.2
2 have to go
3 had to buy
4 have to change
5 had to answer
### 33.3
2. Did he have to wait?
3. Does she have to go?
4. Did you have to pay?
5. Do you have to do?

### 33.4
2. Doesn’t have to wait.
3. Didn’t have to get up early.
4. Doesn’t have to work (so) hard.
5. Don’t have to leave now.

### 33.5
3. Have to pay
4. Had to borrow
5. Must stop or have to stop *(both are correct)*
6. Has to meet
7. Must tell or have to tell *(both are correct)*

### 33.6
2. I have to go to work every day.
3. I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
4. I have to go shopping tomorrow.

### UNIT 34
#### 34.1
2. Would you like an apple?
3. Would you like some coffee? ... a cup of coffee?
4. Would you like some cheese? ... a piece of cheese?
5. Would you like a sandwich?
6. Would you like some cake? ... a piece of cake?

#### 34.2
2. Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3. Would you like to come to a concert next week?
4. Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

### UNIT 35
#### 35.1
2. Don’t buy
4. Smile
5. Don’t sit
6. Have
7. Don’t forget
8. Sleep
9. Be ... Don’t drop

#### 35.2
2. Let’s take a taxi
3. Let’s watch TV
4. Let’s go to a restaurant
5. Let’s wait a little

#### 35.3
3. No, let’s not go out. or
4. No, don’t let’s go out.
5. No, don’t close the window.
6. No, don’t phone me (tonight).
7. No, let’s not wait for Andy. or
8. No, don’t let’s wait for Andy.
9. No, don’t turn on the light.
10. No, let’s not go by bus. or

### UNIT 36
#### 36.1
2. He used to play football.
3. She used to be a taxi driver.
4. They used to live in the country.
5. He used to wear glasses.
6. This building used to be a hotel.

#### 36.2
2–6
- She used to play volleyball.
- She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out a lot.
- She used to play the guitar.
- She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
- She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

### UNIT 37
#### 37.1
3. There’s/There is a hospital.
4. There isn’t a swimming pool.
5. There are two cinemas.
6. There isn’t a university.
7. There aren’t any big hotels.

#### 37.2
*Example answers:*
3. There is a university in ... 4. There are a lot of big shops.
5. There isn’t an airport.
6. There aren’t many factories.

#### 37.3
2. There’s/There is
3. Is there
4. Are there
5. Is there
6. There isn’t
7. Is there
8. Are there
9. There’s / There is ...
   - There aren’t

#### 37.4
2–6
- There are eight planets in the solar system.
- There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
- There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
- There are thirty days in September.
- There are fifty states in the USA.

#### 37.5
2. It’s
3. There’s
4. There’s ... Is it
5. Is there ... there’s
6. It’s
7. Is there
UNIT 38

38.1
2 There was a carpet
3 There were three pictures
4 There was a small table
5 There were some flowers
6 There were some books
7 There was an armchair
8 There was a sofa

38.2
3 There was
4 Was there
5 there weren't
6 There wasn't
7 Were there
8 There wasn't
9 There was
10 there weren't

38.3
2 There are
3 There was
4 There's/There is
5 There's been/There has been or There was
6 there was
7 there will be
8 there were ... there are
9 There have been
10 there will be or there are

UNIT 39

39.1
2 It's cold. 5 It's snowing.
3 It's windy. 6 It's cloudy.
4 It's sunny/fine. or It's a nice day.

39.2
2 It's / It is
3 Is it
4 is it ... it's / it is
5 It's / It is
6 Is it
7 is it
8 It's / It is
9 It's / It is

39.3
2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4
3 It 6 it
4 It ... It 7 It ... there
5 There 8 It

UNIT 40

40.1
2 is 5 will
3 can 6 was
4 has

40.2
2 'm not 5 isn't
3 weren't 6 hasn't
4 haven't

40.3
3 doesn't 6 does
4 do 7 don't
5 did 8 didn't

40.4
Example answers:
2 I like sport, but my sister doesn't.
3 I don't eat meat, but Jenny does.
4 I'm American, but my husband isn't.
5 I haven't been to Japan, but Jenny has.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 Do you? 5 Do I?
3 Didn't you? 6 Did she?
4 Doesn't she?

41.2
3 Have you? 8 Aren't you?
4 Can't she? 9 Did you?
5 Were you? 10 Does she?
6 Didn't you? 11 Won't you?
7 Is there? 12 Isn't it?

41.3
2 aren't they
3 wasn't she
4 haven't you
5 don't you
6 doesn't he
7 won't you

41.4
2 are you 6 didn't she
3 isn't she 7 was it
4 can't you 8 doesn't she
5 do you 9 will you

UNIT 42

42.1
2 either 5 either
3 too 6 either
4 too 7 too

42.2
2 So am I.
3 So have I.
4 So do I.
5 So will I.
6 So was I.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither did I.
9 Neither have I.
10 Neither am I.
11 Neither do I.

42.3
1 So am I.
2 So can I. or I can't.
3 Neither am I. or I am.
4 So do I. or I don't.
5 Neither do I. or I do.
6 So did I. or I didn't.
7 Neither have I. or I have.
8 Neither do I. or I do.
9 So am I. or I'm not.
10 Neither have I. or I have.
11 Neither did I. or I didn't.
12 So do I. or I don't.
UNIT 43
43.1
2 They aren't / They're not married.
3 I haven't had dinner.
4 It isn't cold today.
5 We won't be late.
6 You shouldn't go.

43.2
2 I don't like cheese.
3 They didn't understand.
4 He doesn't live here.
5 Don't go away!
6 I didn't do the shopping.

43.3
2 They haven't arrived.
3 I didn't go to the bank.
4 He doesn't speak German.
5 We weren't angry.
6 He won't be pleased.
7 Don't phone me tonight.
8 It didn't rain yesterday.
9 I couldn't hear them.
10 I don't believe you.

43.4
2 I'm not / am not
3 can't
4 doesn't
5 isn't / 's not
6 don't ... haven't
7 Don't
8 didn't
9 haven't
10 won't
11 didn't
12 weren't
13 hasn't
14 shouldn't / mustn't

43.5
3 He wasn't born in London.
4 He doesn't like London.
5 He'd like to live in the country.
6 He can drive.
7 He hasn't got a car.
8 He doesn't read newspapers.
9 He isn't interested in politics.
10 He watches TV most evenings.
11 He didn't watch TV last night.
12 He went out last night.

UNIT 44
44.1
3 Were you late this morning?
4 Has Kate got a key?
5 Will you be here tomorrow?
6 Is Paul going out this evening?
7 Do you like your job?
8 Does Nicole live near here?
9 Did you enjoy the film?
10 Did you have a good holiday?

44.2
2 Do you use it a lot?
3 Did you use it yesterday?
4 Do you enjoy driving?
5 Are you a good driver?
6 Have you ever had an accident?

44.3
3 What are the children doing?
4 How is cheese made?
5 Is your sister coming to the party?
6 Why don't you tell the truth?
7 Have your guests arrived yet?
8 What time does your train leave?
9 Why didn't Emily go to work?
10 Was your car damaged in the accident?

44.4
3 What are you reading?
4 What time did she go to bed?
5 When are they going (on holiday)?
6 Where did you see him?
7 Why can't you come to the party?
8 Where has she gone?
9 How much (money) do you need?
10 Why doesn't she like you?
11 How often does it rain?
12 When did you do it? / ... the shopping?

UNIT 45
45.1
2 What fell off the shelf?
3 Who wants to see me?
4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
5 What made you ill?
6 Who is / Who's coming?

45.2
3 Who did you phone?
4 What happened last night?
5 Who knows the answer?
6 Who did the washing-up?
7 What did Jane do? / What did she do?
8 What woke you up?
9 Who saw the accident?
10 Who did you see?
11 Who has got your pen? / Who has got it? / Who's got ... ?
12 What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

45.3
2 Who phoned you?
3 What did she want?
4 Who did you ask?
5 What did he say?
6 Who got married?
7 Who told you?
8 Who did you meet?
9 What did she tell you?
10 Who won?
11 What did you do (after the game)?
12 Who gave you a / the book?
13 What did Catherine give you?

UNIT 46
46.1
2 What are you looking for?
3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
4 What / Who was the film about?
5 Who did you give the money to?
6 Who was the book written by?
Key to Exercises

46.2
2 What are they looking at?
3 Which restaurant is he going to?
4 What are they talking about?
5 What is she listening to?
6 Which bus are they waiting for?

46.3
2 Which hotel did you stay at?
3 Which (football) team does he play for?
4 Which school did you go to?

46.4
2 What is the food like?
3 What are the people like?
4 What is the weather like?

46.5
2 What was the film like?
3 What were the lessons like?
4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 47

47.1
3 What colour is it?
4 What time did you get up?
5 What type of music do you like?
6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

47.2
2 Which coat
3 Which film/movie
4 Which bus

47.3
3 Which 8 Who
4 What 9 What
5 Which 10 Which
6 What 11 What
7 Which

47.4
2 How far
3 How old
4 How often
5 How deep
6 How long

47.5
2 How heavy is this box?
3 How old are you?

4 How much did you spend?
5 How often do you watch TV?
6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

UNIT 48

48.1
2 How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?
3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

48.2
Example answers:
2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...
4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

48.3
2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3 How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5 How long did it take them to repair the computer?

48.4
2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
6 It took me ... to ...
UNIT 50

50.1
2 She said (that) she was very busy.
3 She said (that) she couldn’t go to the party.
4 He said (that) he had to go out.
5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6 She said (that) she didn’t feel very well.
7 They said (that) they would be home late. / … they’d be …
8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / … she’d just come back …
9 She said (that) she was going to buy a new computer.
10 They said (that) they hadn’t got a key. / They said (that) they didn’t have a key.

50.2
2 She said (that) she wasn’t hungry.
3 he said (that) he needed it.
4 she said (that) she didn’t want to go.
5 She said (that) I could have it.
6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / … he’d send …
7 Nicole said (that) he had gone home. / … he’d gone home.
8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

50.3
3 said 7 said
4 told 8 told
5 tell 9 tell
6 say 10 say

UNIT 51

51.1
3 phone
4 phone Paul
5 to phone Paul
6 to phone Paul
7 phone Paul
8 to phone Paul
9 phone Paul
10 phone Paul

51.2
3 get
4 going
5 watch
6 flying
7 listening
8 eat
9 waiting
10 wear
11 doing … staying
12 have
13 having
14 to have
15 hear
16 go
17 listening
18 to make
19 to know
20 use

UNIT 52

52.1
3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to ask
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to go
14 crying / to cry
15 to work … talking

52.2
2 to help
3 to see
4 reading
5 to lose
6 to send
7 raining
8 to go
9 watching / to watch
10 to wait

52.3
2 going to museums
3 to go
4 writing / to write letters
5 to go (there)
6 travelling by train
7 walking

52.4
Example answers:
1 I enjoy cooking.
2 I don’t like driving.

UNIT 53

53.1
2 I want you to listen carefully.
3 I don’t want you to be angry.
4 Do you want me to wait for you?
5 I don’t want you to phone me tonight.
6 I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2
2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 She asked me to help her.
5 I told him to come back in ten minutes.
6 Paul let me use his phone.
7 I told her not to phone before 8 o’clock.
8 Ann’s mother taught her to play the piano.

53.3
2 to repeat
3 wait
4 to arrive
5 to get
6 go
7 borrow
8 to tell
9 to make (or to get)
10 think

UNIT 54

54.1
2–4
1 I went to the café to meet a friend.
2 I went to the chemist to get some medicine.
3 I went to the supermarket to buy some food.
Key to Exercises

54.2
2 to read the newspaper
3 to open this door
4 to get some fresh air
5 to wake him up
6 to see who it was

54.3
Example answers:
2 to talk to you now
3 to tell her about the party
4 to do some shopping
5 to buy a car

54.4
2 to 7 to
3 to 8 to
4 for 9 for
5 to 10 for
6 for 11 to ... for

54.5
2 for the film to begin
3 for it to arrive
4 for you to tell me

UNIT 55

55.1
3 to
4 to
5 – (no preposition)
6 for
7 to
8 on ... to
9 for
10 on
11 to
12 – (no preposition)
13 on
14 for
15 on

55.2
2 went fishing
3 goes swimming
4 going skiing
5 go shopping
6 went jogging

55.3
2 to university
3 shopping
4 to sleep
5 home
6 skiing
7 riding
8 for a walk
9 on holiday ... to Portugal

55.4
2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
3 I left the party at 11.15
4 and got home at midnight.
5 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o’clock.

UNIT 56

56.1
2 get your jacket
3 get a doctor
4 get a taxi
5 gets the job
6 get some milk
7 get a ticket
8 get a good salary
9 get a lot of rain
10 get a new computer

56.2
2 getting dark
3 getting married
4 getting ready
5 getting late

56.3
2 get wet
3 got married
4 gets angry
5 got lost
6 get old
7 got better

56.4
2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
3 I left the party at 11.15
4 and got home at midnight.
5 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o’clock.

56.5
2 got off
3 got out of
4 got on

UNIT 57

57.1
2 do 7 done
3 make 8 make
4 made 9 making
5 did 10 do
6 do 11 doing

57.2
2 They’re/They are doing (their) homework.
3 He’s/He is doing the shopping. or He is shopping.
4 She’s/She is making a jacket.
5 They’re/They are doing an exam. (or ... taking an exam.)
6 He’s/He is making the/his bed.

57.3
2 make 8 make
3 do 9 do
4 done 10 making
5 made 11 made
6 doing 12 make ... do
7 did

UNIT 58

58.1
3 He hasn’t got / He doesn’t have
4 Gary had
5 Have you got / Do you have
6 we didn’t have
7 She hasn’t got / She doesn’t have
8 Did you have

58.2
2 She’s/She is having a cup of tea.
3 He’s/He is having a rest.
4 They’re/They are having a good time.
5 They’re/They are having dinner.
6 He’s/He is having a bath.

58.3
3 Have a nice/good trip!
4 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
5 Did you have a nice/good game (of tennis)?
6 Have a nice/good time! or Have a nice/good evening! or Have fun!
7 Did you have a nice/good holiday?

58.4
2 have something to eat
3 had a glass of water
4 have a walk
5 had an accident
6 have a look
UNIT 59

59.1
1 him 5 him
2 them 6 them
3 her 7 her

59.2
2 I ... them 6 she ... them
3 he ... her 7 they ... me
4 they ... us 8 she ... you
5 we ... him

59.3
2 I like him.
3 I don't like it.
4 Do you like it?
5 I don't like her.
6 Do you like them?

59.4
2 him 8 them
3 them 9 me
4 they 10 her
5 us 11 them
6 it 12 he ... it
7 She

59.5
2 Can you give it to him?
3 Can you give them to her?
4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?
6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 60

60.1
2 her hands
3 our hands
4 his hands
5 their hands
6 your hands

60.2
2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Jane lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.

60.3
2 their 6 their
3 his 7 her
4 his 8 their
5 her

UNIT 61

61.1
2 mine 6 yours
3 ours 7 mine
4 hers 8 his
5 theirs

61.2
2 yours
3 my ... Mine
4 Yours ... mine
5 her
6 My ... hers
7 their
8 Ours

61.3
3 of hers
4 friends of ours
5 friend of mine
6 friend of his
7 friends of yours

61.4
2 Whose camera is this?
   It's hers.
3 Whose gloves are these?
   They're mine.
4 Whose hat is this?
   It's his.
5 Whose money is this?
   It's yours.
6 Whose books are these?
   They're ours.

UNIT 62

62.1
2 Yes, I know her, but I can't remember her name.
3 Yes, I know them, but I can't remember their names.

62.2
2 He invited us to stay with him at his house.
3 They invited me to stay with them at their house.
4 I invited them to stay with me at my house.
5 She invited us to stay with her at her house.
6 Did you invite him to stay with you at your house?

62.3
2 I gave her my address, and she gave me hers.
3 He gave me his address, and I gave him mine.
4 We gave them our address, and they gave us theirs.
5 She gave him her address, and he gave her his.
6 You gave us your address, and we gave you ours.
7 They gave you their address, and you gave them yours.

62.4
2 them 6 us
3 him 7 her
4 our 8 their
5 yours 9 mine

UNIT 63

63.1
2 myself 6 himself
3 herself 7 yourself
4 themselves 8 yourselves
5 myself

63.2
2 When I saw him, he was by himself.
3 Don't go out by yourself.
4 I went to the cinema by myself.
5 My sister lives by herself.
6 Many people live by themselves.
63.3
2 They can’t see each other.
3 They phone each other a lot.
4 They don’t know each other.
5 They’re sitting next to each other.
6 They gave each other presents / a present.

63.4
3 each other 7 each other
4 yourselves 8 each other
5 us 9 them
6 ourselves 10 themselves

UNIT 64

64.1
3 Helen is Brian’s wife.
4 James is Sarah’s brother.
5 James is Daniel’s uncle.
6 Sarah is Paul’s wife.
7 Helen is Daniel’s grandmother.
8 Sarah is James’s sister.
9 Paul is Sarah’s husband.
10 Paul is Daniel’s father.
11 Daniel is James’s nephew.

64.2
2 Andy’s 5 Diane’s
3 Dave’s 6 Alice’s
4 Jane’s

64.3
3 OK
4 Simon’s phone number
5 My brother’s job
6 OK
7 OK
8 Paula’s favourite colour
9 your mother’s birthday
10 My parents’ house
11 OK
12 OK
13 Silvia’s party
14 OK

UNIT 65

65.1
2 a 5 a 8 an
3 a 6 an 9 an
4 an 7 a

65.2
2 a vegetable
3 a game
4 a tool
5 a mountain
6 a planet
7 a fruit
8 a river
9 a flower
10 a musical instrument

65.3
2 He’s a shop assistant.
3 She’s an architect.
4 He’s a taxi driver.
5 He’s an electrician.
6 She’s a photographer.
7 She’s a nurse.
8 I’m a/an …

65.4
2–8
Tom never wears a hat.
I can’t ride a bicycle.
My brother is an artist.
Rebecca works in a bookshop.
Jane wants to learn a foreign language.
Mike lives in an old house.
This evening I’m going to a party.

UNIT 66

66.1
2 boats
3 women
4 cities
5 umbrellas
6 addresses
7 knives
8 sandwiches
9 families
10 feet
11 holidays
12 potatoes

66.2
2 teeth 5 fish
3 people 6 leaves
4 children

66.3
3 … with a lot of beautiful trees.
4 … with two men.
5 OK
6 … three children.
7 Most of my friends are students.
8 He put on his pyjamas …
9 OK
10 Do you know many people …
11 I like your trousers.
Where did you get them?

UNIT 67

67.1
3 a jug
4 water
5 toothpaste
6 a toothbrush
7 an egg
8 money
9 a wallet
10 sand
11 a bucket
12 an envelope

67.2
3 … a hat.
4 … a job?
5 OK
6 … an apple …
7 … a party …
8 … a wonderful thing.
9 … an island.
10 … a key.
11 OK
12 … a good idea.
13 … a car?
14 … a cup of coffee?
15 OK
16 … an umbrella.

67.3
2 a piece of wood
3 a glass of water
4 a bar of chocolate
5 a cup of tea
6 a piece of paper
7 a bowl of soup
8 a loaf of bread
9 a jar of honey

UNIT 68

68.1
2 I bought a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen.
3 I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread (or a loaf of bread).
4 I bought some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb.

68.2
2 Would you like some coffee? (or ... a cup of coffee?)
3 Would you like a biscuit?
4 Would you like some bread? (or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5 Would you like a chocolate?
6 Would you like some cake? (or ... a piece of cake?)

68.3
2 some ... some
3 some
4 a ... some
5 an ... some
6 a ... a ... some
7 some
8 some
9 some ... a

68.4
2 eyes
3 hair
4 information
5 chairs
6 furniture
7 job
8 wonderful weather

UNIT 69
69.1
3 a
4 the
5 an
6 the ... the
7 a ... a
8 a ... a
9 ... a student ... a journalist ... an apartment near the college ... The apartment is ...
10 ... two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three ... in a factory ... hasn't got a job ...

69.2
2 the airport
3 a cup
4 a nice picture
5 the dictionary
6 the floor

69.3
2 ... send me a postcard.
3 What is the name of ...
4 ... a very big country.
5 What is the largest ...
6 ... the colour of the carpet.
7 ... a headache.
8 ... an old house near the station.
9 ... the name of the director of the film ...

UNIT 70
70.1
3 ... the second floor.
4 ... the moon?
5 ... the best hotel in this town?
6 OK
7 ... the city centre.
8 ... the end of May.
9 OK
10 ... the first time I met her.
11 OK
12 The Internet is a good way of getting information.
13 OK
14 ... on the top shelf on the right.
15 ... in the country about ten miles from the nearest town.

70.2
2 the same time
3 the same age
4 the same colour
5 the same problem

70.3
2 the guitar
3 breakfast
4 television/TV
5 the sea
6 the bottom

70.4
2 the name
3 The sky
4 television
5 the police
6 the capital
7 lunch
8 the middle

UNIT 71
71.1
2 the cinema
3 hospital
4 the airport
5 home
6 prison

71.2
3 school
4 the station
5 home
6 bed
7 the post office

71.3
2 the cinema
3 go to bed
4 go to prison
5 go to the dentist
6 go to university/college
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

71.4
3 the doctor
4 OK
5 OK
6 OK
7 the bank
8 OK
9 OK
10 the city centre
11 the station
12 OK
13 OK
14 OK
15 the theatre

UNIT 72
72.1
Example answers:
2 I don't like dogs.
3 I hate museums.
4 I love big cities.
5 Tennis is all right.
6 I love chocolate.
7 I don't like computer games.
8 I hate parties.

72.2
Example answers:
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 I'm interested in sport.
4 I don't know much about art.
5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
6 I know a little about economics.
Key to Exercises

72.3
3 friends
4 parties
5 The shops
6 the milk
7 milk
8 basketball
9 computers
10 The water
11 cold water
12 the salt
13 the people
14 Vegetables
15 The houses
16 the words
17 photographs
18 the photographs
19 English ... international business
20 Money ... happiness

UNIT 73

73.1
3 Sweden
4 The Amazon
5 Asia
6 The Pacific
7 The Rhine
8 Kenya
9 The United States
10 The Andes
11 Bangkok
12 The Alps
13 The Red Sea
14 Jamaica
15 The Bahamas

73.2
3 OK
4 the Philippines
5 the south of France
6 the Regal Cinema
7 OK
8 the Museum of Art
9 OK
10 Belgium is smaller than the Netherlands.
11 the Mississippi ... the Nile
12 the National Gallery
13 the Park Hotel in Hudson Road
14 OK
15 The Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16 OK
17 the United States
18 the west of Ireland
19 OK

UNIT 74

20 The Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 75

75.1
2 I don't need one
3 I'm going to get one
4 I haven't got one
5 I've just had one
6 there's one in Mill Road

75.2
2 a new one
3 a better one
4 an old one
5 a big one
6 a different one

75.3
2 Which ones?
   The green ones.
3 Which one?
   The one with /a/the red door.
4 Which ones?
   The ones on the top shelf.
5 Which one?
   The black one.
6 Which one?
   The one on the wall.
7 Which one?
   The tall one with long hair.
8 Which ones?
   The yellow ones.

UNIT 76

76.1
2 some 8 some
3 any 9 some
4 any 10 any ... any
5 any 11 some ... any
6 some 12 some
7 any

76.2
2 some questions
3 any photographs
4 any foreign languages
5 some friends
6 some milk
7 any batteries
8 some fresh air
9 some cheese
10 any help

76.3
3 I've got some / I have some
4 I haven't got any / I haven't any / I don't have any
5 I didn't buy any
6 I bought some
7 I didn't make any

76.4
2 something
3 anything
4 anything
5 Somebody/Someone
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 something
9 anything
10 anybody/anyone

UNIT 77

77.1
2 There are no shops near here.
3 Carla has got no free time.
4 There is no light in this room.
5 There isn't any milk in the fridge.
6 There aren't any buses today.
7 Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.
8
8b Nobody/No-one was late.

78.4
3 anything
4 Nobody/No-one
5 Nothing
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 nothing
9 anything
10 anything
11 nobody/no-one
12 anything
13 Nothing
14 Nobody/No-one ...
   anybody/anyone

UNIT 79
79.1
2 something
3 somewhere
4 somebody/someone
79.2
2a Nowhere.
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody/No-one.
2b I'm not going anywhere.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

79.3
3 anything
4 anything
5 somebody/someone
6 something
7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/no-one
8 anything
9 Nobody/No-one
10 anybody/anyone
11 Nothing
12 anywhere
13 somewhere
14 anything
15 anybody/anyone

79.4
2 anything to eat
3 nothing to do
4 anywhere to sit
5 something to drink
6 nowhere to park
7 something to read
8 somewhere to stay

UNIT 80
80.1
2 Every day
3 every time
4 Every room
5 every word
80.2
2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 all day
7 every day
80.3
2 every 6 all
3 all 7 every
4 all 8 all
5 Every 9 every
80.4
2 everything
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 everything
5 everywhere
6 Everybody/Everyone
7 everywhere
8 Everything
80.5
2 is 6 was
3 has 7 makes
4 likes 8 is ... Does
5 has

UNIT 81
81.1
3 Some 10 Most
4 Most of 11 most of
5 most 12 Some
6 any of 13 All or All of
7 all or all of 14 some of
8 None of 15 most of
9 any of
81.2
2 All of them.
3 Some of them.
4 None of them.
5 Most of them.
6 None of it.
81.3
3 Some people ...
4 Some of the questions ...
   or Some questions ...
5 OK
6 All insects ...
7 OK (or ... all of these books)
UNIT 82

82.1
3 Both 9 Neither
4 Neither 10 either of
5 Neither 11 Both
6 both 12 neither of
7 Either 13 Both
8 neither of 14 either of

82.2
2 Both windows are open.
3 Neither man is wearing a hat. or Neither of them is wearing ...
4 Both men have (got) beards. or Both of them have ...
5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.
6 Neither answer is right.

82.3
3 Both of them are students.
4 Neither of them has (got) a car.
5 Both of them live in London.
6 Both of them like cooking.
7 Neither of them can play the piano.
8 Both of them read newspapers.
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 83

83.1
2 many 8 many
3 much 9 How many
4 many 10 How much
5 many 11 How much
6 much 12 How many
7 much

83.2
2 much time
3 many countries
4 many people
5 much luggage
6 many times

83.3
2 a lot of interesting things
3 a lot of accidents
4 a lot of fun
5 a lot of traffic

83.4
3 a lot of snow
4 OK
5 a lot of money
6 OK
7 OK
8 a lot

83.5
3 She plays tennis a lot.
4 He doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot.)
5 He doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)
6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 84

84.1
2 a few 5 a little
3 a little 6 a few
4 a few

84.2
2 a little milk
3 A few days
4 a little Russian
5 a few friends
6 a few times
7 a few chairs
8 a little fresh air

84.3
2 very little coffee
3 very little rain
4 very few hotels
5 very little time
6 Very few people
7 very little work

84.4
2 A few 5 few
3 a little 6 a little
4 little 7 little

84.5
2 ... a little luck
3 ... a few things
4 OK
5 ... a few questions
6 ... few people
7 OK

UNIT 85

85.1
2 I like that green jacket.
3 Do you like classical music?
4 I had a wonderful holiday.
5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2
2 black clouds
3 long holiday
4 hot water
5 fresh air
6 sharp knife
7 dangerous job

85.3
2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes horrible.

85.4
2 It doesn't look new.
3 You don't sound American.
4 I don't feel cold.
5 They don't look heavy.
6 Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

UNIT 86

86.1
2 badly 5 fast
3 quietly 6 dangerously
4 angrily

86.2
2 work hard
3 sleep well
4 win easily
5 Think carefully
6 know her very well
7 explain things very clearly/well
8 Come quickly

86.3
2 angry 8 quiet
3 slowly 9 badly
4 slow 10 nice (See Unit 85C.)
5 careful 11 quickly
6 hard 12 suddenly

86.4
2 well 5 well
3 good 6 good ... good
4 well
UNIT 87

87.1
2 bigger
3 slower
4 more expensive
5 higher
6 more dangerous

87.2
2 stronger
3 happier
4 more modern
5 more important
6 better
7 larger
8 more serious
9 prettier
10 more crowded

87.3
2 hotter/warmer
3 more expensive
4 worse
5 further
6 more difficult or harder

87.4
3 taller
4 harder
5 more comfortable
6 better
7 nicer
8 heavier
9 more interested
10 warmer
11 better
12 bigger
13 more beautiful
14 sharper
15 more polite
16 worse

UNIT 88

88.1
3 Liz is taller than Ben.
4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
5 Ben works harder than Liz.
6 Ben has got more money than Liz.
7 Liz is a better driver than Ben.
8 Ben is more patient than Liz.
9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz. / Ben dances better than Liz.
10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben.
11 Liz speaks French better than Ben. / Liz speaks better French than Ben. / Liz's French is better than Ben's.
12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Liz. / ... more often than Liz.

88.2
2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.
3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. or
You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
7 You've got more money than them. / ... than they have.
8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

88.3
2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
3 My camera costs a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. or
My camera was a bit more expensive than ...

UNIT 89

89.1
2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.
5 B has got more money than C, but not as much as A. or
... but less (money) than A.
6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

89.2
2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.
3 I didn't get up as early as you. /... as you did.
4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.
5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
6 He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

89.3
2 as 6 than
3 than 7 as
4 than 8 than
5 as

89.4
2 Julia lives in the same street as Laura.
3 Julia got up at the same time as Andy.
4 Andy's car is the same colour as Laura's.

UNIT 90

90.1
2 C is longer than A. D is the longest.
3 B is the shortest.
4 D is younger than C. B is the youngest.
5 C is the oldest.
6 D is more expensive than A. C is the most expensive.
7 A is the cheapest.
8 A is better than C. A is the best.
9 D is the worst.
90.2
2 the happiest day
3 the best film
4 the most popular singer
5 the worst mistake
6 the prettiest village
7 the coldest day
8 the most boring person

90.3
2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
3–6 Brazil is the largest country in South America.
   Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
   The Nile is the longest river in Africa. 
   … in the world.
   Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

UNIT 91

91.1
2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind

91.2
2 The car isn’t big enough.
3 His legs aren’t long enough.
4 He isn’t strong enough.

91.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 eat enough
7 enough space
8 tired enough
9 practise enough

91.4
2 sharp enough to cut
3 warm enough to go
4 enough bread to make
5 well enough to win
6 enough time to read

UNIT 92

92.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast
5 too big
6 too crowded

92.2
3 enough 8 enough
4 too many 9 too
5 too 10 too many
6 enough 11 too much
7 too much

92.3
3 It’s too far.
4 It’s too expensive.
5 It isn’t/It’s not big enough.
6 It was too difficult.
7 It isn’t good enough.
8 I’m too busy.
9 It was too long.

92.4
2 too early to go to bed
3 too young to get married
4 too dangerous to go out at night
5 too late to phone Sue (now)
6 too surprised to say anything

UNIT 93

93.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week.
5 OK
6 Jane bought a present for her friend. or Jane bought her friend a present.
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8 OK
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

93.2
2 I bought a new computer last week.
3 Paul finished his work quickly.
4 Emily doesn’t speak French very well.
5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6 Do you know London well?
7 We enjoyed the party very much.
8 I explained the problem carefully.
9 We met some friends at the airport.

UNIT 94

94.1
2 He always gets up early.
3 He’s/He is never late for work.
4 He sometimes gets angry.
5 He rarely goes swimming.
6 He’s/He is usually at home in the evenings.

94.2
2 Susan is always polite.
3 I usually finish work at 5 o’clock.
4 Sarah has just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 The bus isn’t usually late.
7 I don’t often eat fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 Have you ever lost your passport?
10 Do you still work in the same place?
11 They always stay in the same hotel.
12 Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
13 Is Tina already here?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
15 I can never remember his name.

94.3
2 Yes, and I also speak French.
3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4
1 They both play football.
   They're / They are both students.
   They've both got cars.
They both have cars.
2 They're / They are all married.
   They were all born in England.
   They all live in New York.

UNIT 95
95.1
2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
3 Are you still a student?
4 Have you still got a motorbike? / Do you still have ...
5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

95.2
2 He was looking for a job.
   He's / He is still looking (for a job).
   He hasn't found a job yet.
3 She was asleep.
   She's / She is still asleep.
   She hasn't woken up yet. / She isn't awake yet. / She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't up yet.

UNIT 96
96.1
2 He gave it to Gary.
3 He gave them to Sarah.
4 He gave it to his sister.
5 He gave them to Robert.
6 He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2
2 I gave Joanna a plant.
3 I gave Richard a tie.
4 I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
6 I gave Kevin a pen.

96.3
2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
3 Can you give me your address?
4 Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5 Can you send me some information?
6 Can you show me the letter?
7 Can you get me some stamps?

96.4
2 lend you some money
3 send the letter to me
4 buy you a present
5 pass me the sugar
6 give it to her
7 showed the policeman my identity card

UNIT 97
97.1
3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn't have your number.
5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

97.2
Example answers:
2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
3 but it was closed.
4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

97.3
Example answers:
3 I went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good.
4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.
5 There was a film on television, so I watched it.
6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 98
98.1
2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
3 When I phoned her, there was no answer.
KEY TO EXERCISES

4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
6 When I go to the hotel, there were no rooms.

98.2
2 when they heard the news
3 they went to live in New Zealand
4 while they were away
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house
7 they didn’t believe me

98.3
2 I finish
3 it’s
4 I’ll be ... she leaves
5 stops
6 We’ll come ... we’re
7 I come ... I’ll bring
8 I’m
9 I’ll give ... I go
10 I’ll tell ... I’m

98.4
*Example answers:*
2 you finish your work
3 I’m going to buy a motorbike
4 you get ready
5 I won’t have much free time
6 I come back

UNIT 99

99.1
2 If you pass the exam, you’ll get a certificate.
3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
4 If you don’t want this magazine, I’ll throw it away.
5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 If you’re busy now, we can talk later.
7 If you’re hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

99.2
2 I give
3 is
4 I’ll call
5 I’ll be ... get
6 Will you go ... they invite

99.3
*Example answers:*
3 ... you’re busy.
4 ... you’ll feel better in the morning.
5 ... you’re not watching it.
6 ... she doesn’t study.
7 ... I’ll go and see Chris.
8 ... the weather is good.
9 ... it rains today.

99.4
2 When
3 If
4 If
5 if
6 When
7 if
8 when ... if

UNIT 100

100.1
3 wanted
4 had
5 were/was
6 didn’t enjoy
7 could
8 tried
9 didn’t have

100.2
3 I’d go / I would go
4 she knew
5 we had
6 you won
7 I wouldn’t stay
8 we lived
9 It would be
10 the salary was/were
11 I wouldn’t know
12 would you change

100.3
2 I’d watch it / I would watch it
3 we had some pictures on the wall
4 the air would be cleaner
5 every day was/were the same
6 I’d be bored / I would be bored
7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8 we would/could buy a bigger house

100.4
*Example answers:*
2 I’d go to Antarctica
3 I didn’t have any friends
4 I’d buy a house if I had enough money.
5 I’d try and help
6 there were no guns

UNIT 101

101.1
2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 A liar is a person who doesn’t tell the truth.

101.2
2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn’t very friendly.

101.3
2 who
3 which
4 which
5 who
6 which

*that is also correct in all these sentences.*

101.4
3 ... a machine **that/which** makes coffee.
4 OK (**which** is also correct)
5 ... people **who/that** never stop talking.
6 OK (**who** is also correct)
7 OK (**that** is also correct)
8 ... the sentences **that/which** are wrong.
9 ... a car **that/which** cost £40,000.
**UNIT 102**

102.1
2 I’ve lost the pen you gave me.
3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
5 I didn’t believe the story he told us.
6 How much were the oranges you bought?

102.2
2 The meal you cooked was excellent.
3 The shoes I’m wearing aren’t very comfortable.
4 The people we invited to dinner didn’t come.

102.3
2 Who are the people you were talking to?
3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
4 Where is the party you’re going to?
5 What’s the name of the film you were talking about?
6 What’s that music you’re listening to?
7 Did you get the letter you were waiting for?

102.4
2 What’s the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
3 How big is the village where you live?
4 Where exactly is the factory where you work?

**UNIT 103**

103.1
3 at 11 at
4 on 12 in
5 in 13 on
6 in 14 on
7 on 15 at
8 on 16 at
9 at 17 at
10 on 18 in

103.2
2 on 11 at
3 at 12 on
4 in 13 in
5 in 14 at

103.3
2 on Friday
3 on Monday
4 at 4 o’clock on Thursday / on Thursday at 4 o’clock
5 on Saturday evening
6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

103.4
2 I’ll call you in three days.
3 My exam is in two weeks.
4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / … in 30 minutes.

103.5
3 in
4 – (already complete)
5 – (already complete)
6 in
7 at
8 – (already complete)
9 – (already complete)
10 on
11 in
12 at

**UNIT 104**

104.1
2 Alex lived in Canada until 1999.
3 Alex has lived in England since 1999.
4 Karen lived in France until 2003.
5 Karen has lived in Switzerland since 2003.
6 Clare worked in a hotel from 1998 to 2001.
7 Clare has worked in a restaurant since 2001.
8 Adam was a teacher from 1992 to 1998.
9 Adam has been a journalist since 1998.
10 Alex has lived in England for ….. years.
11 Karen has lived in Switzerland for ….. years.
12 Clare worked in a hotel for three years.
13 Clare has worked in a restaurant for ….. years.

15 Adam was a teacher for six years.
16 Adam has been a journalist for ….. years.

**UNIT 105**

105.1
2 after lunch
3 before the end
4 during the course
5 before they went to Australia
6 during the night
7 while you are waiting
8 after the concert

105.2
3 while
4 for
5 while
6 during
7 while
8 for
9 during
10 while

105.3
2 eating
3 answering
4 having/taking
5 finishing/doing
6 going/travelling

105.4
2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.
3 Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.
4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
5 Let’s have a cup of coffee before going out.

**UNIT 106**

106.1
2 In the box.
3 On the box.
4 On the wall.
5 At the bus stop.
6 In the field.
7 On the balcony.
Key to Exercises

8 In the pool.
9 At the window.
10 On the ceiling.
11 On the table.
12 At the table.

106.2
2 in
3 on
4 in
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 in
9 at
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 at
15 on the wall in the living room

UNIT 107

107.1
2 At the airport.
3 In bed.
4 On a ship.
5 In the sky.
6 At a party.
7 At the doctor’s.
8 On the second floor.
9 At work.
10 On a plane.
11 In a taxi.
12 At a wedding.

107.2
2 in
3 in
4 at
5 in
6 in
7 at
8 at
9 in
10 in
11 in
12 in
13 at
14 in
15 on

UNIT 108

108.1
2 to
3 in
4 to
5 in
6 to
7 to
8 to

108.2
3 to
4 to
5 at home ... to work
6 at
7 – (already complete)
8 to

108.3
2 to
3 to
4 in
5 to
6 at
7 at
8 to
9 at
10 at
11 at
12 to Maria’s house ... at home
13 – (already complete)
14 meet at the party ... go to the party

108.4
1 to
2 – (already complete)
3 at
4 in
5 to
6 – (already complete)

108.5
Example answers:
2 to work
3 at work
4 to Canada
5 to parties
6 at a friend’s house

UNIT 109

109.1
2 next to / beside / by
3 in front of
4 in front of
5 next to / beside / by
6 in front of
7 behind
8 on the left
9 in the middle

109.2
2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 by / next to / beside
7 below / under
8 above
9 under
10 by / next to / beside
11 opposite
12 on

UNIT 110

110.1
2 Go under the bridge.
3 Up the hill.
4 Go down the steps.
5 Go along this street.
6 Go into the hotel.
7 Go past the hotel.
8 Go out of the hotel.
9 Go over the bridge.
10 Go through the park.

110.2
2 off
3 over
4 out of
5 across
6 round/around
7 through
8 on
9 round/around
10 into the house through a window

UNIT 111

111.1
2 on time
3 on holiday
4 on the phone
5 on television
112.5
Example answers:
2 I'm afraid of the dark.
3 I'm not very good at drawing.
4 I'm not interested in cars.
5 I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 113

113.1
2 to 5 at
3 for 6 for
4 to

113.2
2 to
3 to
4 for
5 to
6 of/about
7 for
8 on
9 to
10 for
11 to
12 – (already complete)
13 to
14 on
15 of/about

113.3
1 at 4 after
2 after 5 at
3 for 6 for

113.4
Example answers:
3 It depends on the programme.
4 It depends on what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends on how much you want.

UNIT 114

114.1
2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off/away
5 turned round/around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

114.2
2 away
3 round/around
4 going out ... be back
5 down
6 over
7 back
8 in
9 up
10 going away ... coming back

UNIT 115

115.1
2 She took off her hat. or She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. or He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. or She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. or He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the tap. or She turned the tap off.

115.2
2 He put on his jacket on.
He put it on.
3 She took off her glasses.
She took them off.
4 I picked up the phone up.
I picked it up.
5 They gave the key back.
They gave it back.
6 We turned off the lights.
We turned them off.

115.3
2 take it back
3 picked them up
4 switched it off
5 bring them back

115.4
3 knocked over
4 look it up
5 throw them away
6 tried on
7 showed me round
8 gave it up or gave up (without it)
9 fill it in
10 put your cigarette out
Key to Additional exercises

1 Kate is a doctor.
2 The children are asleep.
3 Gary isn’t hungry.
4 The books aren’t on the table.
5 The hotel is near the station.
6 The bus isn’t full.

6 Are you married?
1 Where do you live?
2 Have you got? Do you have any children?
3 How old is she?
4 How old are you?
5 What do you do? Where do you work? What’s your job?
6 Do you like/enjoy your job?
7 Have you got? Do you have a car?
8 Do you (usually) go to work by car?
9 What’s his name? What’s he called?
10 What does he do? What’s his job?
11 Does he live/work in London?

7 Sonja is 32 years old.
8 I’ve got / I have two sisters.
9 We often watch TV in the evening.
10 Jane never wears a hat.
11 A bicycle has got two wheels. / ... has two wheels.
12 These flowers are beautiful.
13 Mary speaks German very well.

8 are you cooking
9 plays
10 I’m going
11 It’s raining
12 We’re looking
13 do you pronounce

9 we go
10 is shining
11 are you going
12 do you go
13 She writes
14 I never read
15 They’re watching
16 She’s talking
17 do you usually have
18 He’s visiting
19 I don’t drink

10 invited/asked
11 He was good at sport.
12 He played football.
13 He didn’t work hard at school.
14 He had a lot of friends.
15 He didn’t have a bicycle.
16 He wasn’t a quiet child.

12 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
13 Did you like/enjoy Amsterdam?
14 Where did you stay?
15 Was the weather good?
16 When did you get/come back?

13 I forgot
14 did you get
15 I didn’t speak
16 Did you have
17 he didn’t go
18 she arrived
19 did Robert live
10 The meal didn’t cost

14 were working
15 opened
16 rang ... was cooking
17 heard ... looked
18 was looking ... happened
19 wasn’t reading ... was watching
20 didn’t read
21 finished ... paid ... left
22 saw ... was walking ... was waiting
Key to Additional exercises

15
3 is playing
4 gave
5 doesn't like
6 did your parents go
7 saw ... was driving
8 Do you watch
9 were you doing
10 goes
11 'm/am trying
12 didn't sleep

16
3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
4 I've/I have found them.
or I've got them.
5 I haven't read it.
6 Have you seen her?
7 I've/I have had enough.
8 Have you (ever) been to
Sweden?
9 We've/We have (just)
been to the cinema.
10 They've/They have gone
to a party.
11 He's/He has (just) woken
up.
12 How long have you lived
here? or ... have you
been living here?
13 we've/we have known
each other for a long time.
14 It's/It has been raining all
day, or It has rained all
day, or It has been
horrible/bad all day.

17
3 's/has been
4 for
5 since
6 has he lived / has he been /
has he been living
7 for
8 've/been/have been

18
Example answers:
3 I've just started this
exercise.
4 I've met Julia a few times.
5 I haven’t had dinner yet.
6 I've never been to
Australia.
7 I've lived here since I was
born.
8 I've lived here for three
years.

19
3 bought/got
4 went
5 've/have read or
read or
've/have finished with
6 haven't started (it) or
haven't begun (it)
7 was
8 didn't see
9 left
10 's/has been
11 was
12 've/have never made

20
3 He's/He has already gone.
4 she left at 4 o'clock.
5 How many times have you
been there?
6 I haven't decided yet.
7 It was on the table last
night.
8 I've eaten there a few
times.
9 What time did they arrive?

21
1 When was the last time?
or When did you go the
last time?
2 How long have you had
it?
I bought/got it yesterday.
3 How long have you lived
here? / have you been
there / have you been
living here?
Before that we lived in
Mill Road.
How long did you live in
Mill Road?
4 How long have you
worked there / have you
been working there?
What did you do before
that?
I was a taxi driver. or
I worked as a taxi driver.

22
Example answers:
2 I didn't go out last night.
3 I was at work yesterday
afternoon.
4 I went to a party a few
days ago.
5 It was my birthday last
week.
6 I went to America last year.

23
2 B 9 C
3 D 10 D
4 A 11 A
5 A 12 C
6 D 13 B
7 C 14 C
8 B 15 A

24
1 was damaged ... be
knocked down
2 was built ... is used ... is
being painted
3 is called ... be called ...
was changed
4 have been made ... are
produced

25
2 is visited
3 were damaged
4 be built
5 is being cleaned
6 be forgotten
7 has already been done
8 be kept
9 Have you ever been bitten
10 was stolen

26
2 My car was stolen last
week.
3 You're/You are wanted
on the phone.
4 All the bananas have been
eaten.
5 The machine will be
repaired.
6 We're/We are being
watched.
7 The housework has to be
done.

27
3 pushed
4 was pushed
5 has taken
6 is being repaired
7 invented
8 was the camera invented
9 have been washed or
were washed
10 I've/I have washed them.
or I washed them.
11 did they send or have
they sent
12 be sent
Key to Additional exercises

28
1 B 8 B
2 A 9 B
3 C 10 A
4 B 11 B
5 C 12 C
6 C 7 C

29
1 I stayed
   did you do
   I watched
   Are you going
   I'm going
   are you going to see
   I don't know. I haven't decided
2 have you been
   We arrived
   are you staying / are you going to stay
   do you like
   we're having
3 I've just remembered –
   Karen phoned
   She always phones ... Did she leave
   she wants
   I'll phone ... Do you know
   I'll get
4 I'm going ... Do you want
   are you going
   Have you ever eaten
   I've been ... I went
5 I've lost ... Have you seen
   You were wearing ... I came
   I'm not wearing
   Have you looked / Did you look
   I'll go

30
1 we met
2 we sat / we were sitting
3 We didn't know
4 we became
5 we liked
6 we spent
7 We left
8 we meet
9 has been
10 she's working
11 She's coming
12 she comes
13 we'll have / we're going to have
14 It will be

31
2 we're staying
3 we enjoyed
4 We watched
5 slept
6 I don't sleep
7 we're not doing / we're not going to do
8 we're going
9 to see
10 We haven't decided
11 wants
12 to go
13 I'll send
14 you're having
15 are working / have been working
16 he had
17 he needs
18 We've been
19 We got
20 seeing
21 I liked
22 we went
23 we left
24 had
25 he wasn't injured
26 was damaged
27 We've changed / We changed
28 we're leaving
29 We're staying / We're going to stay / We'll stay
30 flying
31 That will be / That's going to be
32 finished
33 I'll let
34 we get
35 are looking
36 We're going
37 we'll send

32
2 A 11 B
3 B 12 A
4 C 13 C
5 B 14 B
6 C 15 C
7 B 16 A
8 A 17 C
9 C 18 B
10 A

33
2 a car
3 the fridge
4 a teacher
5 school
6 the cinema
7 a taxi
8 the piano
9 computers
10 the same

34
4 a horse
5 The sky
6 a tourist
7 for lunch (-)
8 the first President of the United States
9 a watch
10 remember names (-)
11 the next train
12 sends emails (-)
13 the garden
14 the Majestic Hotel
15 ill last week (-) ... to work (-)
16 the highest mountain in the world
17 to the radio ... having breakfast (-)
18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)
19 a doctor ... an art teacher
20 the second floor ... the top of the stairs ... on the right
21 After dinner (-) ... watched television (-)
22 a wonderful holiday in the south of France (-)

35
2 in 12 at
3 on 13 at
4 at 14 in
5 on 15 at
6 in 16 on
7 since 17 by
8 on 18 for ... on
9 by 19 to ... in
10 in 20 at ... in
11 for
Key to Study guide

Present
1.1 B
1.2 A
1.3 C
1.4 A
1.5 C, D
1.6 B
1.7 D
1.8 C
1.9 C
1.10 A
1.11 C
1.12 A
1.13 D
1.14 C
1.15 A
1.16 D
1.17 C, D
1.18 A, D

Past
2.1 B
2.2 E
2.3 D
2.4 B
2.5 A
2.6 D
2.7 A
2.8 C
2.9 C

Present perfect
3.1 B, E
3.2 D
3.3 B
3.4 D
3.5 E
3.6 B
3.7 A
3.8 C
3.9 D
3.10 E

Passive
4.1 D
4.2 C
4.3 E
4.4 A
4.5 A

Verb forms
5.1 D
5.2 B

Future
6.1 A
6.2 A
6.3 C
6.4 A, B
6.5 B

6.6 C
6.7 D
6.8 C
6.9 B

Modals, imperative etc.
7.1 C, D
7.2 A, C
7.3 A
7.4 D
7.5 B
7.6 E
7.7 B, D
7.8 D
7.9 C
7.10 C
7.11 A
7.12 E

There and it
8.1 B
8.2 E
8.3 A
8.4 A
8.5 B

Auxiliary verbs
9.1 C
9.2 A
9.3 C
9.4 B
9.5 B
9.6 C
9.7 D

Questions
10.1 D
10.2 D
10.3 A
10.4 A
10.5 B
10.6 D
10.7 B
10.8 A
10.9 C, E
10.10 C
10.11 A
10.12 A, C

Reported speech
11.1 E
11.2 A, B, D

-ing and to ...
12.1 B
12.2 D
12.3 B
12.4 C
12.5 B, C
12.6 C

12.7 A
12.8 D

Go, get, do, make and have
13.1 A, D
13.2 C
13.3 C, D
13.4 A, D
13.5 B
13.6 D

Pronouns and possessives
14.1 A
14.2 C
14.3 D
14.4 B
14.5 B, C
14.6 A
14.7 E
14.8 A
14.9 D
14.10 C

A and the
15.1 C
15.2 B
15.3 A, C
15.4 B
15.5 B
15.6 A
15.7 D
15.8 C
15.9 B
15.10 B
15.11 E
15.12 D
15.13 B
15.14 A

Determiners and pronouns
16.1 C
16.2 C
16.3 B
16.4 B
16.5 C
16.6 A, C
16.7 D
16.8 B, D
16.9 A
16.10 B
16.11 E
16.12 B, D
16.13 A
16.14 A, B
16.15 D
16.16 A, C
16.17 D
16.18 B
16.19 A
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key to Study Guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjectives and adverbs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.3  C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.6  B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.9  A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.12  A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.1  B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conjunctions and clauses</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1  C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.4  E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.7  B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prepositions</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4  B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phrasal verbs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.9  B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.12  A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.15  A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.18  B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1  C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

**a/an** 65  
a and some 67–68  
a/an and the 69  
**about** 111E  
**above** 109E  
**active and passive** Appendix 1  
**across** 110  
**adjectives** 85  
adjectives and adverbs  
(quickly) 86  
comparatives (older / more expensive) 87–89  
superlative (the oldest / the most expensive) 90  
get + adjective (get tired etc.)  
56B  
possessive adjectives (my/your/her etc.) 60, 62  
something/anything etc. + adjective  
79C  
adjectives + preposition (afraid of etc.) 112A  
**adverbs** 86  
word order (always/usually/often etc.) 94  
**advise** (advise somebody to ...) 53B  
**afraid (of)** 112A  
**after** 98, 105  
**ago** 19B  
**all**  
all and every etc. 80  
all (of) 81  
word order 94  
**along** 110  
**already** 95C  
already + present perfect 16B  
word order 94  
**also** (word order) 94  
**always**  
always + present simple 5C  
word order 94  
**am/is/are** 1–2  
am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C  
in there is / there are 37  
see a  
and 97  
angry (with/about) 112A  
**another** 65B  
**any**  
any and some 76  
not + any 77  
any and no 77  
any (of) 81  
anybody/anyone/anything  
76D, 78–79  
**anywhere** 79  
apostrophe (I'm, it's etc.)  
Appendix 4  
apostrophe's (my brother's car) 64  
are see am/is/are  
around 110, 114–115,  
Appendix 7  
arive 108C  
articles (a/an/the) 65–73  
a/an 65, 67–68  
a/an and the 69  
the 70–73  
as (not as ... as) 89  
ask  
ak somebody to ... 53B  
ak somebody for ... 113A  
at  
at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103  
at the bus stop / at work etc. 106–107  
at and to 108  
at the age of ... 111B  
**auxiliary verbs** 23, 40–42  
**away**  
rush away / throw away etc.  
(phrasal verbs) 114–115,  
Appendix 7  
**back**  
come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7  
**be** (infinitive of am/is/are)  
am/is/are 1–2  
am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C  
was/were 10  
was/were + -ing (past continuous)  
13, 23A, 51C  
have/has been (present perfect)  
15–18  
passive 21–22, Appendix 1  
will be 27  
**because** 97  
**beep**  
have/has been (present perfect)  
15–18  
been and gone 17C  
there has/have been 38B  
before 98, 105  
begin (begin to ... or begin -ing)  
52C  
**behind** 109A  
**belong (to)** 113A  
**below** 109E  
**beside** 109A  
**best** 90B  
**better** 87D  
**between** 109A  
between (a bit older/bigger etc.) 88D  
**born** 21C  
**both** 82  
word order 94  
**but** 97  
by 111C  
by after the passive (I was bitten by a dog.) 21D  
by myself / by yourself etc. 63C  
by (= beside) 109C  
**can/can't** 30  
**comparative** (older / more expensive etc.) 87–89  
**conditional** (if ...)  
if I do ... 99  
if I did ... 100  
**conjunctions** 97–100  
and / but / or / so / because 97  
when / before / while / after / until 98  
if 99–100  
**continue** (continue to ... or continue -ing) 52C  
**contractions** (short forms - I'm, it's, you're etc.) Appendix 4  
**could/couldn't** 30C–D  
**countable** and **uncountable**  
nouns 67–68  
**depend** (on) 113C  
**did**  
didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A  
did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A  
**different** (from) 112A  
**direct speech** and reported speech 50  
**do and make** 57  
don't / doesn't in negatives 6, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A  
do / does in questions 7, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A  
don't go / don't fall etc.  
(imperative) 35B  
**down** 110  
sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7  
**during** 105
Index

each other 65D
either
either and too 42A
either (of) 82
embedded questions (Do you know what ... etc.) 49
end (at the end of) 103B, 106B
enjoy
enjoy -ing 52B
enjoy myself/myself etc. 63A
enough 91
enough and too 92D
ever
Have you ever ... ? 17
superlative + ever 90E
word order 94
every 80
everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere 80C
expect 52A, 53B
far
How far is it? 39A, 47D
far – further 87B
fast 86C
fed up (with) 112A
few / a few 84
finish (finish -ing) 52B
for
for ten minutes / for three years etc. 19, 104D
for and to 54B
for a walk etc. 55C
for and during 105C
from 104A, 110
front (in front of) 109A–B
full (of) 112A
further 87B
future 25–28
I'm working tomorrow. (present continuous) 25
The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple) 25C
I'm going to (do something) 26
will 27–28
shall 27D, 28C
future after when/after/while etc. 98B
future after if 99B
geographical names with and without the 73
gerund see -ing
get 56
get to (a place) 56C, 108C
get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114, Appendix 6
give
give something to somebody / give somebody something 96
give up / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 6–7
go 55
- ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
go home / go to work / go to the cinema 71
go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114
going to (I'm going to do something) 26
gone and been 17C
good
good and well 86D
good at 112A
got
past of get 11C, 56
have / has got 9, 58A
had
past of have 11C
had to 33B
He said he had (done something) 50, Appendix 1.1
happen (to) 113A
hard 86C
has seen have 52C–D
have 9, 58
have got / has got 9, 58A
have done / have been etc. (present perfect) 15–18, 23C
have to 33
have a nice time / have fun etc. 35A
there has / have been 38B
have breakfast / have a shower etc. 58B
her 59–60, 62
hers 61–62
herself 63
him 59, 62
himself 63
his 60–62
holiday (on holiday) 55B, 111A
home 55A, 71A, 108B
got home 56C, 108C
how 47
How long have you ... ? (present perfect) 18
How big? / How old? / How far? etc. 47D
How long does it take? 48
How much? / How many? 83A
if you / he / she etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
if 99–100
if we go / if you see etc. 99
if and when 99C
if I had / if we went 100
Do you know if ... ? 49C
imperative (do this / don't do that etc.) 35
in
in April / in summer etc. 103
in a room / in hospital etc. 106–107
in five minutes / in three years etc. 103E
in and to 108
put something in 110
go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
infinitive (do/see/play etc.)
infinitive (do/see etc.) and to + infinitive (to do / to see etc.) 51, 53
can / will / should etc. + infinitive 51A
verbs + to + infinitive (I want to go etc.) 51B, 52–53
infinitive and -ing (do/doing etc.) 51–52
I want to the shop to buy ... (infinitive for purpose) 54
infinitive and for ... 54B
adjective + infinitive (it's easy to ...) 39B
something to eat / nowhere to go etc. 79D
- ing (doing / playing / going etc.)
am / is / are + -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
us / were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
- ing and infinitive (do / doing etc.) 51–52
verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.) 52B–C
- ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
prepositions + -ing 105D, 112B
interested (in) 112A
into 110
irregular verbs 11C, 24B,
Appendix 2–3
is see am / is / are
it 39, 59B
it is and there is 37B, 39A
it's and its 60C
its 60
just
just + present perfect 16A
word order 94
kind (kind to somebody / kind of somebody) 112A
know (Do you know where ... ?) 49
phrasal verbs (get up / put on etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
plural (ups → cups / man → men etc.) 66
police (plural) 66D
possessive adjectives (my/your/his etc.) 60, 62
possessive pronouns (mine/your/his etc.) 61–62
prefer 52C–D
prepositions 103–113
at/on/in (time) 103
for/since 19, 104
until 104A–B
before/after/during/while 105
in/at/on (places) 106–107
to/in/at (places) 108
on 103, 106–107, 109A, 111A
at 103, 106–108, 111B
under/behind/opposite etc. (position) 109
up/over/through etc. (movement) 110
by 109C, 111C
with/without 111D, 112B
about 111E
prepositions + -ing (in -ing / without -ing etc.) 105D, 112B
adjective + prepositions (afraid of etc.) 112A
verb + preposition (listen to / wait for etc.) 113
prepositions at the end (Who is she talking to?) 110
prepositions in relative clauses (the man she is talking to) 102B
present continuous (am/is/are + -ing) 3–4, 23A, 51C
negative (I’m not -ing) 3
questions (are you -ing?) 4
present continuous (I am doing) and present simple (I do) 8
present continuous passive 22A, Appendix 1.1
present continuous for the future (What are you doing tomorrow?) 25

present perfect (I have done) 15–20, 23C
present perfect + just 16A
present perfect + already 16B
present perfect + yet 16C, 95B
Have you ever ...? 17
gone and been 17C
How long have you ...? 18
present perfect + for/since 18–19
present perfect continuous (I have been -ing) 18B
present perfect (I have done) and past simple (I did) 20

present perfect passive 22B,
Appendix 1.1
regular and irregular verbs 15B, 24, Appendix 2–3
present simple (I work / she works etc.) 5–7, 23D
negative (don’t / doesn’t) 6, 43B
questions (do / does / ?) 7, 44B
present simple + always / usually / never etc. 5C
present simple (I do) and present continuous (I am doing) 8
present simple passive (the room is cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
present simple for the future (The concert starts at 7.30) 25C
present simple after when / while etc. 98B
present simple after if 99B
promise (promise to ...) 52A
pronouns
personal pronouns (I / me / you etc.) 59, 62
possessive pronouns (mine / your / his etc.) 61–62
reflexive pronouns (myself / yourself etc.) 63
one / ones 75
relative pronouns (who / which / that) 101–102

put
put something in ... 110
put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 7

questions 44–47
am / is / are ...? 2
do / does ...? (present simple) 7, 44B
did ...? (past simple) 12, 44B
Why don’t ...? / Why isn’t ...? etc. 44C
Who saw you? / Who did you see? 45
preposition at the end (Who is she talking to?) 46
What / Which / How ...? 47
How long does it take? 48
Do you know where ...? (embedded questions) 49
reply questions (Have you? / Are you? etc.) 41A
question tags (... do you? / ... isn’t it? etc.) 41B

reflexive pronouns (myself / yourself etc.) 63

regular and irregular verbs 11, 24, Appendix 2–3
relative clauses 101–102
relative pronouns (who / which / that) 101–102
reply questions (Have you? / Are you?) 41A
reported speech
He said that ... / He told me that ... 50
He told me to ... 53B–C
right (on the right) 109A
round 110
turn round / show round (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

’s (apostrophe ’s) 64, Appendix 4.5
same 70B, 89E
say / said
He said that ... (reported speech) 50
say and tell 50B
shall 27D, 28C
short forms (I’m / it’s / you’re etc.) Appendix 4
should 32
simple past see past simple
simple present see present simple
since 19A, 104C
singular and plural (flower → flowers) 66
so
so am I / so do I etc. 42B
I was tired, so I went to bed. 97
some
some and a/an 67–68
some and any 76
some (of) 81
somebody / someone / something / somewhere 76, 79
sometimes
sometimes + present simple 5C
word order 94
sorry (sorry about and sorry for) 112A

speak (to) 113A
spelling Appendix 5
start (start to ... and start -ing) 52C

still 95
word order 94

stop (stop -ing) 52B
suggest (suggest -ing) 52B

superlative (the biggest / the most expensive etc.) 90

318
Essential Grammar in Use

With answers and CD-ROM • Third Edition

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students

Using clear examples and easy-to-follow exercises, this new, full-colour edition of the best-selling Essential Grammar in Use makes learning easy, covering all the areas of grammar that an elementary-level student needs.

- Two-page units with clear explanations on the left page and practice exercises on the right.
- NEW! Study Guide helps you find the most useful language points for you, making this book ideal for self-study.
- NEW! Even more 'Additional Exercises' give you extra practice of difficult areas.

The new CD-ROM gives you hundreds of practice exercises, providing further practice for every unit.

- A variety of games and exercises make learning fun.
- Make your own tests: Choose from over 600 grammar questions to test the areas that YOU want to practise.
- Audio recordings provide extra listening and pronunciation practice.
- The built-in dictionary gives you instant definitions of any new vocabulary.
- Interactive speaking exercises provide extra practice at the end of each section.